

**COMMUNICATION STRATEGIES IN SECOND LANGUAGE
TEACHER TALK WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO
IRANIAN TEACHERS OF ENGLISH**

MOHAMMAD REZA ANANI SARAB

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for
the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

**School of Education
The University of Leeds**

The candidate confirms that the work submitted is his own and that appropriate credit has been given where reference has been made to the work of others.

OCTOBER 2003

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all the individuals and institutions whose contributions were essential for the development of my PhD project, as well as for the writing of this thesis.

First, I am greatly indebted to Martin Bygate for supervising the development of my PhD project. His insightful comments, stimulating discussions, and above all his unbounded enthusiasm support and encouragement have given me the energy and self-confidence to work on this project. Without his critical acumen in reading through the drafts of the thesis, I would not have been able to set out and pursue this work through to its conclusion. He has been of immense support to me not only in the development and writing up of the thesis but also in helping me to cope with periods of personal difficulties.

Second, I am thankful to Virginia Samuda for her very helpful suggestion on task selection, and to all the teaching staff at the School of Education of the University of Leeds for their constant academic support; my special thanks go to Mike Baynham, Lynne Cameron, and Jenny Jarvis. I am also greatly indebted to John Leech for his assistance and support in the early stage of my PhD programme before and after registration.

Third, I am very grateful to the Ministry of Science, Research, and Technology for granting me the scholarship and for all the assistance they provided me during my stay in the UK to complete my PhD programme.

Fourth, my special thanks go to the teachers and students at the four institutions where the data for the research study were collected. The voluntary contributions of the teachers and students at University of Leeds Language Centre, Brudenell Community Language Centre, Kish Language Institute, and Iran Language Institute will always be remembered.

Fifth, I am thankful to all the support staff in the school of education whose assistance over the years has contributed to my study. Apologise for probably not acknowledging every name, I am particularly grateful to Margaret Taylor, Sue Longergan, Mary Hunter, Mary Braithwaite, Jane Orton, Frank Gilmore, Andrew Cole, Richard Sykes, and Ben Holmes.

Sixth, I would like to express my sincere thanks to my friends Abbas Sheikholslami for his assistance in data collection in Iran, and Juup Stelma and Farahman Farrokhi for their cooperation in conducting a reliability check on the category system.

Lastly and especially I thank my wife, Zhila, and my son and daughter, Saeed and Sodabeh, whose courage and determination in facing up to the challenges of living abroad and enduring the absence of my company during months, days and nights over the course of my studies have been a great source of comfort to me. This has, without doubt, made an immense contribution to my study, and one which I will never forget.

Abstract

The focus of this study is the use of communication strategies in teacher talk in ESL/EFL classrooms. Communication strategies consist of adjustments made by speakers to the formulation of their talk in order to facilitate communication, and these are clearly a potentially important aspect of teacher talk. Limiting communication strategies to those adaptations evident in the details of the interaction, the study uses a mixed method design to investigate firstly the type and frequency of communication strategies and their patterns of relationship across teachers grouped in terms of language background and teaching institution; and secondly the type and frequency of strategy use in relation to the focus of talk across the different phases of a standard lesson. The participants were three native speaker and six non-native speaker teachers, across three different ESL/EFL instructional settings. The data consist of a total of twenty seven recordings, made up of three lessons with each teacher.

The study reports results from three phases of analysis. The categorisation phase leads to an operational definition of communication strategies which integrates conversational modifications with lexical-compensatory strategies. The quantification phase of the analysis shows that the two types of strategy occur with different frequencies and functions. No important differences were found between NS and NNS teachers. However, significant task-related differences were detected. Finally a case study of three teachers revealed a relationship between the focus of talk and the incidence of communication strategies across the phases of the analysed lesson. The implications of these results are firstly that communication strategies are indeed a central element of teacher talk; secondly, that lexical-compensatory strategies and meaning negotiation strategies both contribute significantly to the construct; thirdly, that their use is important for both native speaker and non-native speaker teachers; fourthly, that they are used with significantly different frequencies and functions; and finally, that their use is influenced by teaching focus and activity type. It is also likely to be affected by factors such as teaching style. The thesis argues that, on the basis of the findings, further research into the use of communication strategies in teacher talk could make a significant contribution to teacher education.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume I	
CHAPTER 1	INTRODUCTION..... 1
1.1	Focus of the study 1
1.2	Research aims 4
1.3	Rationale..... 5
1.4	Organisation of the thesis 7
CHAPTER 2	REVIEW OF LITERATURE..... 8
2.1	Introduction..... 8
2.2	Defining communication strategies 8
2.2.1	Classification of communication strategies..... 9
2.3	The psycholinguistic perspective 12
2.4	The interactive perspective 15
2.4.1	Interactional modifications..... 20
2.4.2	Repair in classroom interaction 26
2.5	Toward a typology of communication strategies 29
2.5.1	Theoretical Underpinnings 33
2.5.2	Methodological considerations..... 36
2.6	Pedagogic categories in teacher talk..... 40
2.7	Teacher Talk and Classroom Interaction 44
2.7.1	Classroom interaction patterns 44
2.7.2	Classroom interaction patterns as learning contexts 47
2.7.3	Teacher-fronted classroom interaction as ritual..... 48
2.8	Summary 53
CHAPTER 3	RESEARCH DESIGN AND METHODOLOGY..... 55
3.1	Introduction..... 55
3.2	Methodological Framework 55
3.3	Research questions 57
3.4	Pilot study 58
3.4.1	Data collection procedures 58
3.4.2	Developing the framework of analysis..... 59
3.4.3	Context of Use 68

3.4.4 Stimulated Recall Interview	68
3.5 Main study	73
3.5.1 Teaching contexts: institutions and types of courses	73
3.5.2 Subjects	75
3.5.3 Design of the study	76
3.5.4 Data Collection	78
3.6 Data analysis	79
3.6.1 Transcription procedure	79
3.6.2 Unit of Analysis	81
3.6.3 Categorisation.....	82
3.6.3.1 Categories of data analysis	83
3.6.4 Validation of categories of analysis	88
3.6.4.1 Interobserver agreement	90
3.6.5 Quantification of categories of analysis	93
3.6.6 Microanalysis	94
3.6.6.1 Case Profiles	95
3.6.6.1.1 Teacher 3.....	95
3.6.6.1.2 Teacher 4.....	96
3.6.6.1.3 Teacher 7.....	97
3.6.6.2 Task design features	98
3.6.6.3 Context descriptors.....	101
3.6.6.3.1 Types of question	101
3.6.6.3.2 Students' level of participation.....	104
3.6.6.3.3 Topic and activity orientation devices	108
3.6.6.4 Microanalysis procedures	115
3.7 Summary.....	116
CHAPTER 4	CATEGORIES OF DATA ANALYSIS
4.1 Introduction.....	118
4.2 Identification process.....	118
4.3 Category system	119
4.3.1 Macro-categories	120
4.3.2 Micro-categories	124
4.3.2.1 Meaning negotiation strategies	124

4.3.2.2 Lexical-compensatory/concept identification strategies.....	135
4.4 The functions of CSs in classroom interaction.....	145
4.5 Summary.....	150
CHAPTER 5	QUANTITATIVE ANALYSIS.....
5.1 Introduction.....	152
5.2 Overall level of strategy use.....	152
5.3 Patterns of strategy use	158
5.4 Summary.....	165
CHAPTER 6	MICROANALYSIS
6.1 Introduction.....	170
6.2 Overview of the talk of the three teachers	171
6.2.1 Overall distribution of the talk of the three teachers.....	171
6.2.2 Phases and steps of the lesson	172
6.2.3 Types of questions of the three teachers	173
6.2.4 Students' level of participation.....	174
6.3 Case study reports.....	176
6.3.1 Teacher 3.....	177
6.3.2 Teacher 4.....	186
6.3.3 Teacher 7.....	196
6.4 Summary.....	204
CHAPTER 7	DISCUSSION.....
7.1 Introduction.....	208
7.2 Summary of results.....	209
7.3 Discussion.....	212
7.3.1 Categorisation.....	212
7.3.2 Quantitative analysis	216
7.3.3 Microanalysis	224
7.4 Theoretical Implications	226
7.4.1 The analysis of teachers' strategies.....	226
7.4.2 Pedagogical implications.....	232
7.5 Methodological implications.....	235

7.6 Limitations of the study	237
7.7 Suggestions for further research.....	238
CHAPTER 8	CONCLUSION
	239
BIBLIOGRAPHY	243
APPENDIX 1: Transcription conventions.....	252
APPENDIX 2: Coding scheme	253
APPENDIX 3: A sample of communication strategies.....	254
APPENDIX 4: A coded excerpt from lesson 3 using the microanalysis category scheme...	279
APPENDIX 5: The tasks used in lesson three	263
APPENDIX 6: Suggested procedures in conducting the tasks in lesson three	266
APPENDIX 7: Stimulated recall interview with teacher 1.....	268
APPENDIX 8: Background questionnaire	270
APPENDIX 9: Interobserver agreement check	273
APPENDIX 10: Frequency distribution of teachers' CSs in lesson 1, 2, and 3.....	276
Volume II	
APPENDIX 11: Lesson transcripts	281
T1 (3 rd Session).....	281
T2 (3 rd Session).....	309
T3 (3 rd Session).....	330
T4 (3 rd Session).....	355
T5 (1 st Session)	393
T6 (3 rd Session).....	413
T7 (3 rd Session).....	429
T8 (3 rd Session).....	441
T 9 (2 nd Session)	460

**PAGE
NUMBERING
AS ORIGINAL**

<p>S: 49 to take photographs? 50 yeah S: 51 a translator T: 52 a translator, 53 you mean a person or a?: S3: 54 [yes T: 55 you mean a person, 56 a person when you could have = S3: 57 [I T: 58 = that, ok, err or dictionary? 59 Did you mean a dictionary or just somebody you = S3: 60 [somebody huh T: 61 = [+ + +] ok! S: 62 a guide [+ + +] T: 63 a guide, Right, 64 a guide book of some sort, ok 65 and the visa or essential things you think of, 66 are they essential? or? S: 67 well I think the most important thing is information, T: 68 ok, information, 69 information about what for example? S: 70 maybe ways you can get there or anything else T: 71 ok, information about the country you're visiting 72 how to travel there err 73 where you're staying when you get there, ok 74 And this is essential, yeah, ok 75 that's fine 76 now err if you look at the sheets that you've just been handed ok?</p>	<p>77 Err we've got to think about an imaginary situation that you may err you may actually know these type of situation 78 so it's not so imaginary actually 79 Err a friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK Vacation? S: 80 81 holiday T: 82 holiday, yeah 83 What sort of English is vacation? 84 It's a particular type of English 85 Is it British English? S: 86 it's American T: 87 it's American English 88 Absolutely yeah 89 It's American English 90 Err this guy is not a British citizen so he have to deal with immigration and customs when she enters the United Kingdom ok? 91 Now, she doesn't have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a backpack 92 H what's a backpack? S3: 93 it's a bag T: 94 [a bag huh SS: 95 huh T: 96 ok, yeah it's just a little pack that you wear on your back ok 97 Or rucksack basically isn't it? 98 Now, in the box you've got a list of some other things that she's thinking of taking with her, ok? 99 Now what I want you to do is in pairs 100 and I'm gonna- I'm not gonna give you much time because I'm- I expect you to know most of these words 101 I want you to look at the list of the words</p>
---	--

102 items in the box
103 and I want you to check with
the person next to you, that you
understand what those words
are
104 If you don't err a quick check in
the dictionary and I'm gonna
ask you to tell me what the
words mean, ok?
105 So H you work with A
106 make sure you know
107 if you don't know maybe the
person next to you knows
(pair work)
108 ok, I'll give a couple more
minutes and then I'm gonna ask
you
(pair work)
T:
109 right, ok
110 Now, very quickly what I want
you to do is I'm going to ask
somebody to give me err a
definition or an explanation or
illustration of what a particular
word means
111 so could we start with- ok, A!
112 Tell me show me what is a surf
board?
S2:
113 a surf board is in a sea on wave
T:
114 ok, right
115 Can you show me how you
surf?
S:
116 [showing
T:
117 huh you know how to surf?
S:
118 [+ + +]
T:
119 ok, right, ok
120 What is surf though?
121 Ok, you use it on the waves
122 Do you know what the surf
means?
S3:
123 surf is on top of anything
T:
124 yeah, you know the white stuff
on the top of the waves
125 this is the surf
126 Actually you can surf here
127 There are places in Britain you
can surf
128 Ok! S err tell me what is a
laptop computer?
S1:
129 I think it's a more practical err
T:
130 right ok
131 What's a lap?
S1:
132 (miming)
T:
133 yeah, this is your lap
134 so you see people on trains err
people with very small
computers very expensive
actually laptops err but nice
S:
135 it cost a thousand pound
T:
136 yeah, I think so
137 I think they're very expensive
but they look very nice
138 I think if I've got one I wouldn't
actually travel with it
139 it would be dangerous ok, then
140 Err let's see
141 Err hiking boots H?
142 Hiking boots?
S3:
143 I think this is just for [+ + +]
144 it's like a shoe
T:
145 yeah, these are shoes used for
walking
146 Hiking is walking often
climbing
147 How many people go hiking?
148 Anybody doing hiking?
S3:
149 [I used to
go because I think there is no
mountain huh
T:
150 no mountains!
S:
151 yeah
T:
152 no mountains in Britain?
S:
153 yeah
T:
154 maybe not mountains actually
155 but in Scotland actually I think
perhaps is

156 But the lake district lots of
places you can go with hiking
boots, ok!

157 Credit card!

S:
158 credit card is that card for
159 you can spend money and then
after that the money you pay
back

T:
160 ok, right a credit card is one
you can pay for everything you
buy and then err pay later

S3:
161 you don't need to pay some
money

T:
162 right, ok! yes
163 it's substitute for money isn't it?
164 Ok credit cards
165 Lots of people get into trouble
with credit cards

SS:
166 huh

T:
167 yeah?
168 Did you get into trouble with
credit cards?
169 Ok! umbrella is an easy one
170 H what's the meaning of this
word?

S3:
171 we know huh

SS:
172 huh

S3:
173 it has got a handle

T:
174 [yeah

S3:
175 and long surface to prote- to err
no(.) keep safe from raining huh

T:
176 yeah what's the word what's the
word we are going to use?

S3:
177 pro- protect?

T:
178 protect yeah protecting from
rain or prevent rain ok
179 Err photographs of hometown
have you heard that?
180 A hometown A?

S2:
181 hometown (saying it to himself)

T:
182 what's your hometown?
183 Where's your hometown?

S3:
184 Tehran

T:
185 Tehran you hometown is Tehran
186 A! where is your hometown?

S2:
187 Teheran

T:
188 ok, Tehran
189 S! where is your home?
190 You are from the same
hometown?

S:
191 Bangkok

T:
192 ok, Right

S3:
193 why do we need photographs?

T:
194 I don't know
195 Don't worry about that
196 Ok, err international drivers'
license? S?

S:
197 it's [+ + +] we can use for
driving in any place in the world

T:
198 ok, yeah
199 A driving license is like a
passport to drive but it's
international
200 err H?
201 Tourist visa?

S3:
202 I think possibly we need it

T:
203 ok!

S3:
204 we can't go into any country
without it

T:
205 what is a visa then?
206 What- What do you mean?
207 Is- is it card?

S3:
208 I think no huh

T:
209 huh =

S3:
210 [+ + +]

S:
211 there is a card! Huh

SS: 212 huh

T: 213 it's a card but not maybe not for credit
214 go on and what do you say?

S: 215 I think it's like a long card we can't go to the any country without it

T: 216 right, as a tourist, not staying
217 Has anybody have a tourist visa?

SS: 218 no! huh huh

T: 219 it's ok, I'm not [+ + +]

SS: 220 huh

T: 221 it's not gonna be used don't worry, ok!
222 Err I think the other items there are quite straightforward aren't they?
223 I'm not going to ask you what fresh fruit is
224 I am sure that you know what fresh fruit is

S3: 225 if we get pass- British passport we can get visa for other countries or?

T: 226 if you have a British passport! =

S: 227 [yes

T: 228 = and you've got a visa from another country!

S: 229 visa card huh

T: 230 a visa card?

S: 231 no visa card huh

T: 232 you need a visa to travel to other countries? =

S: 233 [yes

T: 234 = if you have a British passport! I think so
235 I am not an expert, you know?

S: 236 it's easy to apply for visa if you apply English

T: 237 yeah, I think if you have a British passport I think it'S:

S: 238 [in many countries you don't need visas if you are British you have a British passport

T: 239
240 yeah I mean it's changing now
241 this for example I have a European passport
242 anybody who the old British passport is now gone
243 these are like- do you know the old ones!
244 they are blue passports but now it's a European passport
245 with European countries together you have a small red passport
246 so you don't have a- I don't have a British passport
247 I have a European passport

S: 248 it's a [+ + +] lion

T: 249 yeah on the front of the passport
250 yeah I mean that's- that's the British passport
251 I think now we gonna have a movement toward the European integration
252 I think everybody [+ + +] a European passport
253 But I think when you have a European passport then it's quite easy to get a visa to a lot of other countries
254 Ok! right! err what I am liking you to do I like you to work in pairs please
255 some of you have started to think about this
256 so again work in the same pairs
257 what I am liking you to do to look at the boxes underneath ok?

258 Err and to help organise things
on the lists to the things that we
just defined tourist visa
umbrella

259 Put them into categories ok!

260 number one it's necessary and
obligatory

261 you can't enter the UK without
this

262 two it's prohibited by law

263 three it's a good idea to bring
this

264 or it's ok but not necessary ok?

265 Now I want you to do two
things please

266 I'd like you to err with the
person next to you I'd like you
to decide which item goes in
which category!

267 And I want you to tell me
talking about why ok?

268 And then I want you to see if
you could think of two or three
extra items, that are not on the
list

269 and I'd like you please to put
them in a particular category

270 and then you're going to tell me
why you would actually take or
not take these items

271 So sort the items in the box into
the categories and then add two
or three of your own(.) ok?

272 See if you can think about why!

273 and I'll ask you to report back
(pair work)

S:
274 all of these are not prohibit!

275 These ones we have to think!

T:
276 right, maybe you could think of
something that's not in the list

277 you mean these are not
prohibited?

278 This is prohibited yeah

279 if non of these are prohibited
may be you could think about
extra

280 what do you think is prohibited

281 Please ask me as well!
(pair work continued)

T:
282 hello

S:
283 hello good morning!

T:
284 you're going to be on tape
today,

285 so you have to make sure you'll
do a lot of talking

S:
286 hope so

T:
287 what I want you do I want you
to go and work with S, over
there

288 and they're going to tell you
what you need to do, ok!

289 So if you take that with you,
(pair work continues)

S:
290 fresh fruits

T:
291 fresh fruits?

S:
292 yes number four huh

T:
293 number four you don't have to
take this,

294 so it is not necessary ok,

295 say goodbye to your fresh fruit
in the UK

296 ok that's fine

S:
297 for English weather sunglasses

T:
298 sunglasses!

S:
299 yeah huh

T:
300 which category you put
sunglasses?

S:
301
[not necessary for the English
weather

T:
302 ok, so which- which particular
category you put it in?

S:
303
[number four

T:
304 number four ok,
305 to bring them is not necessary
306 you have any sunglasses here?

S:
307 yes

T:
308 do you use them?

S: 309 no

T: 310 never?

S: 311 once! or two times

T: 312 once or twice
313 It's only in June may be [+ + +]

S: 314 the last two months or three months just once

T: 315 so animals, you can't-
316 you must not bring animals into the UK!

S: 317 yes some [+ + +]

T: 318 ok

S: 319 leave them for six months

T: 320 yeah you quarantine,
321 what we call quarantine yeah
322 you must leave the animals there in case they have a disease
323 rabies it's a horrible disease

S: 324 [+ + +]

T: 325 Thai food! huh

SS: 326 huh

T: 327 ok, so you don't have to!
328 You don't have to bring Thai food
329 but may be it's ok if you bring

S: 330 book

T: 331 ah books right
332 You mean books about the UK!
333 Do you think that's obligatory?

S: 334 err

T: 335 do you think it's necessary or do you think it's a good idea?

S: 336 I think it's necessary
337 if your English is not well you can buy in Thailand stories about UK

T: 338 ok! Yeah so where would you put them?
339 in here?
340 so it's ok to bring it but not necessary

S: 341 just some- some people

T: 342 right ok!

S: 343 if your English is very good you can come here and buy some books from here

T: 344 right ok!

S: 345 if your English is not well you can buy in Thailand

T: 346 ok B can you think of anything?
347 something that's either necessary and obligatory or prohibited?
348 or a good idea to bring or ok but not necessary?
349 Can you think of anything different that is not in the box that you would:

S: 350 [dictionary]

T: 351 dictionary!

S: 352 yeah

T: 353 necessary or not?

S: 354 yeah

T: 355 huh ok
356 Why is it necessary?

S: 357 because I'm Thai
358 I speak Thai my first language
359 English language is second language so I don't know every word what I mean

T: 360 ok, so which- which category would you put it in?
361 would you say it's necessary?
362 Would you say isn't necessary but it's ok,

363 would you say it's a good idea
 364 or would you say it's!
 S:
 365 [it's not
 good idea but can be!
 T:
 366 ok, so you put it in it's ok but
 not necessary
 S:
 367 um
 S:
 368 [+ + +] you must(.) apply for
 some(.) work permit
 T:
 369 are you applying for a work
 permit?
 SS:
 370 huh
 T:
 371 huh ok, right you MUST apply
 S:
 372 [if you
 stay a long time about six
 months you cannot(.) choose
 what you want [+ + +]
 T:
 373 so you mean you get a tourist
 visa first and then you apply for
 a work permit here
 S:
 374 yeah
 S:
 375 what we call deal with some
 hotel or some place to live for a
 while?
 T:
 376 um:
 S:
 377 [what do you call it?
 T:
 378 you mean if you stay in a hotel
 for a while?
 S:
 379 yes but you make a contact to-
 to let [+ + +] of booking!
 T:
 380 yeah make a reservation
 S:
 381 [may be you
 have-
 382 if you haven't(.) make not
 contact and you walk in
 383 may be(.) you have to live
 underground after night because
 no room for you
 T:
 384 ok well you have to make a
 reservation aren't you?
 S:
 385 [yes
 T:
 386 that's why they call it to make a
 reservation at a hotel to stay for!
 S:
 387 [yeah for: whatever!
 T:
 388 I don't know for a number of
 weeks or a number of months
 S:
 389 that we talk about tourist
 situation
 T:
 390 well yeah, yes it's close to the
 tourists' yeah
 391 Yeah! for a short vacation short
 holiday
 392 So do you think that's necessary
 or::
 S:
 393 [you mean a call?
 T:
 394 huh huh huh
 S:
 395 if you can't find a room you can
 go to hotel carton
 T:
 396 ok
 S:
 397 do you know hotel carton?
 S:
 398 what?
 T:
 399 ok, is it
 400 is it obligatory?
 S:
 401 what obligatory mean?
 T:
 402 it means you must do it by law
 403 yeah ok
 404 So is it obligatory to make a
 reservation at a hotel?
 S:
 405 no! ok, but it's perhaps
 necessary for
 406 err may be it's a good idea ok!
 407 If it's not then you will have to
 be sitting in streets or something

SS: 408 huh

T: 409 may be
410 I am going give a few minutes
411 err make sure that you've got
some reasons for why you put
the things in the little boxes
412 make sure you've got one or
two extra items
(pair work)

S: 413 I've got credit card

T: 414 you've got a credit card ok
415 that's not a problem at all ok
416 you've got a credit card
417 so ok no problem
418 buy some tapes and CDs ok
419 what about a watch?
420 you've got a watch!

S: 421 [+ + +]

T: 422 ok is this err necessary?
423 is it a good idea?

S: 424 it's a good idea

T: 425 so you put it in box:
426 right so you should take a watch
with you

S: 427 yeah

SS: 428 huh

T: 429 or you could ask people all the
time,
430 may be after a while I think you
would be a little bit too [+ + +]
after a while

S: 431 yeah because people ask me all
time

T: 432 they ask you what do got-
you've got the face
433 sometimes people ask a lot
about what time is it
434 I think you've got a positive
kind face
435 people think ah I will ask this
man,

436 he looks like he knows what
time is it

437 Right ok, good to ask err to
begin with-

438 right well I'm gonna ask A and
H ok!

439 I'm going to look at number one
440 Box number one
441 can you tell us which things you
would put in box number one
and why ok!

S: 442 passport

T: 443 ok a passport

S: 444 visa(.) and a return airline ticket
is very important

T: 445 huh

SS: 446 huh

T: 447 right ok
448 So this is err this necessary and
obligatory ok
449 So passport(.) err ticket

S: 450 a return airline ticket

T: 451 and a return airline ticket ok
452 do you think that- did you put
money in the:

S: 453 err

T: 454 [in the box

S: 455 [many items you
need but a visa card or credit
card item three

T: 456 ok why did you put- is a visa
card more important more
necessary than money?
457 do you think?

S: 458 yeah visa and because some
people
459 it hasn't credit card just have
money when travelling abroad

T: 460 ok why do you think a visa card
is more important when you
travel abroad than money?

461 Is it more convenient?
462 What do you think H?
S: 463 because we can't go to any
country because
S4: 464
[because sometimes if you went
to some parts lots of people
465 you may: about to: loss your
money your cash
T: 466 ok So if you carry cash you can
lose it
S: 467 yeah is that good enough? visa
T: 468
[very good yeah
469 I like- that's a good reason
S4: 470 thank you
T: 471 ok! that's an excellent reason
472 yeah may be it's safer
473 but what happens if you lose
your visa card?
S: 474 err
T: 475 [huh huh
S4: 476 we can phone
T: 477 ok you phone
478 Phone where?
S: 479 phone a friend
T: 480 phone a friend huh
SS: 481 huh huh
S3: 482 I think traveller check is better
T: 483 ok Travellers checks
484 Do you think- which box would
you put travellers' checks in?
485 necess- the first box?
S4: 486 so can I-
S2: 487 [it's like money
T: 488 right travellers' check

S4: 489 can I ask about if a tourist loss
something err tourist police?
T: 490 tourist police!
S: 491 yeah we do not have anyone
T: 492 no they don't have tourist police
493 I think you need to go if you
lose something
494 err what do you need to do if
you lose something for
example?
S4: 495 even you cannot telephone
496 you have to find police first
because nobody gonna give you
money to phone to [+ + +] that
your card you lose your card!
497 No! no way!
T: 498 I think what you should do is if
you lose something
499 I think that you should phone
the police or you should go to
the nearest police station
S4: 500 yes
T: 501 ok?
S4: 502 exactly
T: 503 and then you should tell them
that you've lost your money
504 and then err they will help you
or they should help you
S: 505 they cannot [+ + +] if you
lose(.) your card
506 if you go to police they just look
[+ + +]
507 they cannot do they can do
nothing
T: 508 well they can listen and they can
record and they can give you
advice about what you should
do, ok!
S4: 509 may be
T: 510 [may be!
S4:

511 you can telephone a police
 station yeah?
 T:
 512 yeah ok good!
 513 That's good(.) ok,
 514 what about S's group?
 515 what about err is there anything
 that you put in box number two
 516 it is prohibited by law
 517 you must not take this into the
 UK
 518 is there anything in the box that
 you would put in that category?
 519 in the box first
 520 Nothing in the box
 521 so again
 522 sorry! what did you say?
 S:
 523 grugs
 T:
 524 grugs?
 S:
 525 drugs
 526 I don't know the meaning of
 disease
 527 M said to me this
 T:
 528 disease!
 S4:
 529 [translate in Thai
 T:
 530 ok, let's do this in English ok,
 531 explain to s what disease is?
 S2:
 532 disease is err huh
 S4:
 533 make you sick
 T:
 534 Yes?
 S:
 535 something that suffer
 T:
 536 [can you
 give us an example of a disease?
 S2:
 537 something [+ + +]
 T:
 538 well yeah a problem with your
 body,
 S4:
 539 [heart problem
 T:
 540 yeah for example heart disease
 S:
 541 physical problems
 T:
 542 yeah physical problems err:
 S:
 543 disable is not disease
 T:
 544 a disabled is different isn't it?
 545 Err disease for example measles
 or chicken pox slow pox err
 disease for dogs is Rabies ok!
 546 Which is why you need to put
 animals in quarantine
 S:
 547 it means when you are sick you
 can [+ + +] to somebody else
 T:
 548 no no, no disease is when you
 are sick
 549 when your are ill and you have
 a serious problem with your
 body and the way your body
 works
 S:
 550 sometimes you can get disease
 T:
 551 sometimes yes sometimes no
 yeah!
 552 Diseases are sometimes
 contagious which means that
 other people can *catch* your
 disease
 S:
 553 yes I know but a name the- in
 the UK they are not allowed
 554 some people are sick and they
 can somebody else can get can
 get from them
 T:
 555 right yeah
 S:
 556 some cases like malaria or
 something
 T:
 557 [yeah
 S:
 558 and come to England you
 cannot enter
 T:
 559 yeah ok
 560 If you've got- this is the
 adjective if you've got a
 contagious disease
 561 a disease that is dangerous to
 other people

562 for example in animals the dangerous disease like
disease rabies err can spread tuberculosis
very quickly very easily 588 ok so we've got drugs disease
563 it is a contagious disease 589 anything else S?

564 this is the problem ok? S:
565 so(.) yeah huh you must not 590 animal
take it into the UK I mean a T:
contagious disease 591 animals
566 it is not a good idea S:
S4: 592 animals
567 you're not allowed to get in if T:
you've got it 593 yeah(.) err animals are
T: 594 prohibited by law
568 right ok, you're not allowed to 594 what do you do if you bring an
get in animal into the UK?
569 it's prohibited 595 What can you do?

S2: S3:
570 when we came in the first 596 we have to take them to the
immigrant pets
T: 597 the name of the place I don't
571 know huh they control and they
[immigration get the certificate

S: T:
572 they want test us 598 yeah [writes on the board do
you know what this is!

T: 599 Quarantine is you have to put
573 [+ + +] your animal into what they call
S: quarantine
574 no- yes they test me 600 quarantine is you take it to a
T place ok!

575 they test you! 601 You have a dog they take it to a
S: place and they check the dog
576 yeah and may check the dog for
S: disease
577 they test for TB

T: S:
578 TB tuberculosis yeah 602 it's not abattoir

S: T:
579 and after that I can [+ + +] 603 no huh the abattoir no the
580 two months later the doctor abattoir-
came to see me again and test 604 what is an abattoir?
ok! 605 What happens in an abattoir?
T: 606 what happens to the animals?

581 ok! S:
S: 607 killed

582 [because I'm working T:
583 maybe because I'm working in 608 yeah the animals are killed in
an: abattoirs
T: 609 is not abattoir ok!

584 [you're working with food as 610 I know it's foot and mouth
well aren't you! disease that is not huh
585 So I mean working in a: yeah 611 lots of animals unfortunately
586 so Tuberculosis is a good recently have gone to abattoirs
example isn't it? 612 but quarantine is where they are
587 So you must not enter the UK kept and tested and then
with a contagious disease released if they are(.) if they

present no danger to the
 community
 S: 613 what about medicine?
 T: 614 err drugs!
 615 You mean bringing medicine
 into the UK!
 S: 616 [yeah some kind of medicine
 T: 617 err I don't know
 618 what do you think?
 619 Is this prohibited is it prohibited
 to bring medicine into the UK?
 S: 620 they warn me about medicine
 some,
 T: 621 [did they say that you must not
 bring it in?
 SS: 622 [+ + +]
 S4: 623 huh two young man! huh
 624 what did you say?
 S2: 625 some medicines from Thailand
 is better from England
 626 because in England the
 medicine is not strong enough!
 T: 627 ok! so you bring in strong
 medicine then!
 S2: 628 yes but they do not allow some
 medicine like when you get sick
 then you go to see the doctor,
 629 in here the doctor must write
 something to buy
 T: 630 [a prescription
 S2: 631 yes
 T: 632 I see right
 S: 633 medicine for disease are
 allowed and not allowed in
 some countries like in Thailand
 634 now they do not allow
 decongestant you know
 S4: 635 [for hey hey
 T: 636 [hey fever
 S2: 637 it's a kind of
 S: 638 antihistamine
 T: 639 decongestant antihistamine
 640 you are not allowed!
 641 I think it depends on the
 medicine on the drugs I think
 that
 642 they would check I think that it
 is prohibited to bring because
 medicine is a drug
 643 I mean it is prohibited to bring
 certain medicines certain drugs
 into the United Kingdom
 S: 644 yeah in Thailand some kind of
 Aspirin we don't allow to use
 645 but in here I see a lot window
 supermarkets Aspirin
 T: 646 ok so you can bring Aspirin
 S2: 647 [we don't use Aspirin we use
 paracetamol
 T: 648 paracetamol yeah
 649 the [+ + +] is the same isn't it?
 650 Strong aspirin paracetamol isn't
 it!
 S2: 651 [+ + +] some products like tape
 CDs are not allowed
 T: 652 [right
 S2: 653 asking in customs
 T: 654 customs!
 S2: 655 yeah
 T: 656 ok! What was the product
 again?
 657 what was the name again?
 S2: 658 fake fake
 T: 659 err
 S: 660 it is not a copyright

T: 661 oh right fake
662 you mean if you bring fake you mean CDs or tapes or(.) things that are not genuine

S2: 663 yes

T: 664 things that somebody has copied

S2: 665 yeah

T: 666 yeah I think goods things that are: not genuine that somebody has manufactured and not being honest

S2: 667 [+ + +]

T: 668 they call it counterfeit actually
669 counterfeit [write on the board
670 it's a very good word it's actually used as an adjective and it means that yeah don't worry!
671 What it means is what you just said
672 it means that if you bring in something and you say look this is made in: and this does this and does that and it's not
673 and you're trying to sell it and saying this is a genuine product and you are selling something else that is not the genuine product for the same price as a genuine product you're breaking the law
674 so I think that you must not bring in counterfeit products which I think what you just said

S: 675 computers

T: 676 right computers
677 specially computer goods computer programming
678 there are counterfeit laws
679 you must not do certain things and the people do huh
680 everybody does but by law you must not
681 you look worried

S4: 682 can you explain laptop how is big?
683 laptop computer?

S2: 684 depends on the

S4: 685 [how big is it?

T: 686 how big?

S: 687 Mitsubishi is of this size

T: 688 about that size yes
689 have you seen laptop computer?
690 You must have seen laptop computers yeah!

S4: 691 yeah yeah

T: 692 ok!

S2: 693 the one thing is most important is I don't know what we call like gun or bomb

T: 694 weapons

S: 695 weapon!

T: 696 yeah so you must not bring guns knives ok!

S: 697 knives are not allowed?

T: 698 knife is not ok
699 do you know what sort of a knife is!
700 (mime the action) you know what sort of a knife is!
701 if you click and the blade comes (clicking)

SS: 702 huh

S: 703 you are stabbing huh

T: 704 no I'm not stabbing huh
705 this type of knife you must not bring in to the UK
706 it's called a flick knife and if I have if this the knife(.) ok!
707 But this is not sharp this is not the sharp bit as a knife and I go press the button and (clicking) and the sharp knife comes out

S4: 708 [automatically
T: 709 automatically
710 this is a flick knife
711 now you must not bring flick
knives into the UK
712 they are prohibited ok!
713 they are prohibited by law err
S4: 714 [sorry,
T: 715 [don't be sorry I'll talk bout
S4: 716 [Thai language huh
T: 717 do you know what I mean by
flick knife?
718 (clicking) the blade of the knife
the short bit of the knife
automatically comes out
S4: 719 [yeah I know exactly
T: 720 so you must not bring these in
721 so you must not bring weapons
in
S4: 722 and must bring with me all the
time
T: 723 you carry a flick knife?
S4: 724 huh yes
T: 725 I think you are very dangerous
SS: 726 huh
S4: 727 no!
T: 728 I think I think maybe I I,
S4: 729 [I carry it
to protect myself not for steal
something from you or from
anyone
T: 730 yeah I don't have any money on
me,
731 I have a little bit of money so

S4: 732 [no I don't want money
733 I want something! [+ + +]
T: 734 [+ + +]?
S2: 735 what do you want?
S4: 736 something from your brain
T: 737 something from my bank!
S4: 738 your brain
T: 739 brain
740 what do you want from my
brain
S2: 741 knowledge
T: 742 knowledge! ok
743 So you must not bring weapons
in
744 ok then I want to ask H for
number three
745 what have you got for number
three which is:
S3: 746 [international drivers' license
747 books about the UK
748 map of the UK and sun cream
S4: 749 in the UK! Sun cream!
SS: 750 huh
T: 751 so err ok!
752 What do you think about that?
753 You should bring sun cream
into the UK,
754 it's a good idea to bring this
755 Is it a good idea?
S2: 756 [yes because it's very dangerous
in this country
T: 757 oh! because?
S2: 758 [+ + +] broken the(.) sky
ultrasound I think
SS: 759 ozone layer
T: 760 [ozone layer yeah

761	you should know this ozone layer	S:	
S2:		788	yes
762	it is broken and	T:	
S3:		789	why would you bring a map of the UK
763	[skin cancer	790	why would you ask her to bring a map of the UK?
T:		S2:	
764	yes the skin cancer	791	because she might be lost [+ + +] find our ways
T:		T:	
765	ok so you should use sun cream	792	ok like the information
766	is it obligatory?	S2:	
S2:		793	[yes
767	no! I	T:	
T:		794	that K was talking about at the beginning ok
768	[required by law huh	795	S! is there anything that you think is ok to bring but not really very necessary?
SS:		S2:	
769	huh	796	about women they must bring something or make-up
S2:		T:	
770	huh it's a good idea to bring it	797	huh huh ok!
T:		S2:	
771	ok it's a good idea	798	every every women when they go to anywhere they take make-up
772	what other things?	799	I don't know what [+ + +]
773	An umbrella!	T:	
S2:		800	they must bring!
774	umbrella! Yes	S2:	
T:		801	yes they must bring
775	so you should bring an umbrella	T:	
776	it's not raining today?	802	is it obligatory?
S2:		S:	
777	because we can't huh	803	something forbidden huh
S4:		S3:	
778	[not raining today but often	804	they go to boots and they make up early morning and they go to work huh
T:		T:	
779	often raining!	805	oh free make up in boots yeah
S4:		806	so you think it's ok, but it's not necessary yeah!
780	um no today but maybe later	S2:	
T:		807	about woman is number three
781	right	T:	
S2:		808	something that women should do yeah!
782	you cannot trust to the weather and news	S:	
SS:		809	yeah
783	huh	T:	
S2:		810	so it's a good idea, ok!
784	sometimes they say sun shine and sunny and then		
T:			
785	[so you should bring an umbrella!		
S4:			
786	yes		
T:			
787	a map of the UK did you say!		

811 Which box would put make-up
in H!

S3:
812 sorry?

T:
813 make-up which box would you
put it in?

S3:
814 I think number four

T:
815 number four
816 it's ok but not really necessary
ok!
817 Huh what about you Y make-
up!
818 Do you think it's required by
law?
819 Is it a good idea
820 is it err ok but not necessary

S4:
821 um ok but not necessary

T:
822 ok then
823 You put it in the last category!

S4:
824 um

SS:
825 huh

T:
826 right ok! does anybody have
any other items?
827 that's good
828 What I'd like you to do ok! err
iS: I am gonna ask you to work
with a partner
829 one group of three and one
group of two
830 I'm gonna ask you actually to
go and work with somebody
different ok?
831 That's all right!
832 Err and what I like you to do
ok!
833 I'm gong to ask you to write
two sentences ok!
834 And if you look at step four ok!
I'm going to ask to choose an
item from the box or an item
that you have thought about ok?
835 It doesn't matter
836 choose two items write two
sentences about these items ok!
837 So for example let me give you
an example right?

838 Err ... when you go abroad you
must take a passport with you
because it is required by law to
enter the country

839 Full stop ok?

840 So you are actually thinking
about the box or the category
841 you're thinking about the item
and I want you to write a
sentence about the item and
want you to explain in that
sentence why! ok?

842 So let me give an example here
843 I'll write it down on the board
...
844 you must take a British passport
because it is required by law
Ok?

845 So I want you to write two
sentences
846 choose two items err in the
sentence you say you must take
this you should take this you
don't have to take this and the
second part of the sentence you
must explain why?
847 why! it's not necessary but a
good idea
848 why it's obligatory ok!
849 Why err it is prohibited by law

S2:
850 what does this mean belong in?

T:
851 um?

S2:
852 belong

T:
853 all right ok
854 It says write sentences about in
each box explaining why you
think they belong, ok!
855 Why do you think that that item
Thai food fits into this box goes
into
856 It's connected with(.) this box,
857 why have you put it in this box
ok?

S2:
858 belong

T:
859 yeah yeah that's it, ok!
860 so can you change your groups
go and sit next to somebody
861 and in one group of three ok! I
want you to write two sentences

together as a pair or as a three
ok!

862 Is anybody ok with what you
have to do?

SS:
863 yes

T:
864 yeah, ok, go!
(group work)

S2:
865 counterfeit is original or:

T:
866 no this is not original product
867 this is a fake

S2:
868 [+ + +]

T:
869 ah genuine product
870 genuine is G E N U I N E
871 genuine is the original and the
opposite is fake or counterfeit
right
872 can you try make your
sentences as very accurate
873 try and use: make accurate
sentences

S1:
874 umbrella it is not necessary for
travelling
875 what is very important [+ + +]

T:
876 ok so umbrella
877 which category you use?

S:
878 number three for travelling to
UK,

T:
879 [ok so:

S1:
880 but not for travelling in [+ + +]

T:
881 which word would you use to
describe
882 right ok, so- if it's a good idea
to do something which word do
you use?

S1:
883 should

T:
884 should ok,
885 you should take an umbrella
good

886 A! do you want to write your
sentence on the board please the
first one? (The student writes
his sentence on the board.)

T:
887 h! do you want to write one of
your sentences on the board
please (writes on the board)

T:
888 ok, Now what I want you to do
is just have a look
889 err we gonna take a break in a
minute or two
890 but I want you to have a look at
these sentences ok!
891 British weather!

S4:
892 sorry very bad writing huh

T:
893 that's all right that's ok!
894 It's bigger than Ali's writing
here
895 Ok right good
896 Now let's look at these
sentences err
897 ok, A! do you want to read this
sentences?

S1:
898 when somebody wants to travel
abroad must take it because it is
required by law

T:
899 ok, so this a return airline ticket
900 can you see any mistakes in this
sentence?
901 when somebody?

S4:
902 travel

T:
903 right, ok
904 When somebody want to travel!

S1:
905 yes

T:
906 third person isn't it?
907 right ok This is required by law
ok
908 Anything that is required by law
909 we are talking about must
910 it's obligatory
911 If we are thinking about
accuracy I can think of who!
912 When somebody wants to travel
abroad must

913 need a subject they he or she
 must take it because it is
 required by law
 914 and the spelling here abroad!
 915 Aboard is aboard ship ok!
 916 But don't worry because- what
 you've done if you used this
 sub-
 917 what do we call this type of
 verb?
 S:
 918 modal
 T:
 919 modal verb yeah, ok?
 920 We've been using a lot of those
 today
 921 and H do you want to read your
 sentence at the bottom please?
 S4:
 922 we should take an umbrella
 because we can't trust the
 British weather
 T:
 923 ok, which which modal verb did
 you use there?
 924 which modal verb?
 925 in this sentence, which is err
 S4:
 926 [should
 T:
 927 should ok
 928 When do we use should as a
 modal verb?
 929 When do we use it?
 S:
 930 recommend
 T:
 931 yeah a recommendation
 932 Is it obligatory?
 933 is it compulsory?
 S4:
 934 no
 T:
 935 no, ok!
 936 If you look at this one it says
 it's a good idea ok?
 937 It's not obligatory
 938 must is obligatory, ok?
 939 So that's a nice sentence
 940 And it's quite true actually
 S2:
 941 what about trust to?
 T:
 942 yeah this is ok
 943 But trust
 S4:
 944 to something
 T:
 945 yeah this is ok
 946 But so is this
 947 we can't trust the British
 weather is ok
 948 but trust to something is ok
 actually
 949 The most important thing here
 is we've got the modal verbs
 correct
 950 should is not obligatory but it's a
 good idea ok?
 951 Must is something that is
 required by law, that is
 obligatory
 952 Can somebody give me a
 sentence with don't have to in
 it?
 953 using box four
 954 You don't have to
 S4:
 955 you don't have to take make-up
 box to UK
 T:
 956 huh ok (writes on the board)
 957 You don't have to take a make-
 up box to the UK ok
 958 Thai's excellent
 959 err and don't have to means
 what?
 S4:
 960 it's ok to bring this
 T:
 961 is it necessary?
 S4:
 962 no
 T:
 963 right is it obligatory?
 S4:
 964 this is easy huh
 T:
 965 ok, huh so it's not necessary
 966 You don't have to you can
 967 right ok, I want to take a break
 ok!
 968 You've done really well with
 that
 969 some accurate sentences and
 some good discussion
 970 I'm pleased about that

971 Err what I'd like you to do it's
ok, we gonna take a break for:
about five minutes or so

972 I'll make it about 23 minutes
past so take a break to half past

973 Now don't forget if you want a
coffee or anything it's up there

974 What I'd like to do if you want
to stay here if you are staying
there you could look at this
table

975 have you got the err what we've
got here is a table with some
grammatical information about
modal verbs

976 about when you use don't have
to,

977 when you use must and must
not,

978 so if you are not taking a break
outside of the room and you
want to look at this table,

979 just have a look at the table

980 look at the information ok
(Break)

T:

981 we've been using modal verbs
basically in our discussion about
what is necessary what is not
necessary but ok, ok!

982 And what you can and can't do

983 what you are and you aren't
allowed to do ok?

984 Now(.) just looking at the table
here you've got must have got
and have to err must not and can
not can should and don't have
ok?

985 Now we've been using modal
verbs

986 all I want to ask you is is there
anything in the table that you
would like me to explain further

987 That you don't understand

988 err so just have a look at the
table and then I want to ask me
any question that you need to
about what's in the table

S5:

989 ok so!

T:

990 are you ok with the table?

991 Do you understand everything?

S5:

992 yeah with the table ok fine! Huh

T:

993 no not that table not that table

994 Only the table-

995 it's a nice table,

996 it's very nice

997 no problem it's great table huh

SS:

998 huh

T:

999 ok, has everybody read the
table?

1000 Yeah, ok, are there any
problems with that table?

1001 I think you should know most of
that information any way

1002 Are you ok with that A?

S:

1003 yes

T:

1004 ok

S4:

1005 to have got to have is a little bit
huh

T:

1006 [yeah what you've got is you
have got to have a little bit err
clumsy in style

1007 it doesn't sound very good

1008 must and have to are
synonymous

1009 they are synonyms

1010 Have got to is the same as have
to but have got to is just the
same idea but it's a longer way
of saying it

1011 so- I think it the most important
two there are have to and must

1012 They all mean the same thing
now,

S2:

1013 I think we must use with present
tense

1014 have to is used past tense

T:

1015 aha, right, ok

1016 It is a difference with the
grammar ok

1017 That's good

1018 err for example yesterday I had
to go through the customs right?

1019 I have to use this because there
is no past tense form of must
Ok?

1020 So you're quite right

1021 So you say yesterday I had to
visit the police station

1022 Yesterday I had to stop work at
25 past three

1023 So you can't say musted

1024 e d there is no past tense form of
must

1025 so if you remember must and
have to are:

1026 the same meaning but the
grammar is slightly different

1027 the past tense of must is had to
Good

1028 That's a good point

1029 well done you remembered

1030 Ok right good question

1031 Any other question about the
table?

1032 ok, what's the opposite of can?

S4:
1033 cannot

T:
1034 yeah you cannot or can't yeah

1035 Should the opposite of should?

SS:
1036 shouldn't

T:
1037 shouldn't err yeah negative
advice

1038 you shouldn't take

1039 well you shouldn't take sun
cream

1040 it is not necessary

1041 Is everybody ok with that?

1042 No other questions?

S:
1043 no

T:
1044 right ok

1045 Use that as a reference sheet

1046 a useful reference sheet for you
for modal verbs ok!

1047 Talking about necessity
prohibition and also permission
ok S!

S:
1048 yes

T:
1049 ok, the final activity that I want
you to do ok!

1050 And I want you to do this in
groups

1051 so you can stay in the groups
that you are in two three

1052 How many people can drive?

S4:
1053 I used to drive

T:
1054 yeah you can drive

1055 B you can drive?

S4:
1056 I'm going to get

T:
1057 you are going to get?

S4:
1058 yeah a drivers' license

T:
1059 you are going to get a driving
license ok

S2:
1060 British?

S4:
1061 I passed the theory test

T:
1062 you passed the theory test ok!

S4:
1063 six months ago

T:
1064 So you're going to get- you
want to try and get a driving
license

1065 Ok that's good

S:
1066 [easy

T:
1067 Is it hard a theory test?

S4:
1068 no

T:
1069 no ok

S4:
1070 just a monitor for the test

T:
1071 [it's computer
isn't it?

1072 You touch a monitor

S5:
1073 how many?

S4:
1074 they are 22 I think

T:
1075 22 questions!

S4:
1076 yes

S5:
1077 how long?

S4:
1078 I think 45 minutes huh

S5:
1079 45 minutes for 22?

S4:
1080 yes
T:
1081 right ok!: what I want you to do
is in your groups
1082 if you look at exercise two ok?
1083 All I want you to do is to work
with your partner or partners
1084 and I'd like you to look at the
bullet points
1085 you know what bullet points
are?
1086 Yeah [miming the sound of rifle
ok?
1087 And I want you to decide which
of the bullet points are
necessary
1088 important words err if you want
to get a drivers' license ok?
1089 In your country right
1090 So let me change the groups
1091 so yeah can you two work
together and you two work
together
1092 will you three can work together
1093 So we've got a nice split
between the different countries
here ok?
1094 decide which of these are
necessary and obligatory in your
country to get a driving license
1095 Ok! you should have an extra
little sheet
1096 With three bullet points on the
back
1097 have you got that?
(group work)
S2:
1098 high school diploma huh
T:
1099 high school diploma
1100 I think this is American: isn't it?
1101 This American style language
S5:
1102 US? here vocational?
T:
1103 yeah we have diplomas here
1104 but because it says high school
diploma high school is
American
1105 so it's first American language
S5:
1106 ID?
T:
1107 what's ID mean?

S2:
1108 identification
T:
1109 identification yeah
S5:
1110 ID is if you're in the UK means
passport but we have passport
[+ + +]
1111 ID ID is ID not passport
T:
1112 you have ID card?
S5:
1113 yeah
T:
1114 right and the passport!
S5:
1115 yeah we not use the same thing
in just
1116 passport we use ID in our
country
1117 In here we use passport
S2:
1118 yes but birth certificate you use
when you go to primary School
of Education
T:
1119 ok right,
1120 so you don't need a birth
certificate but you need a
passport
S2:
1121 certificate I need
T:
1122 right ID card not necessarily a
passport ok right
S1:
1123 what another important in Iran
you must have a card or
certificate from army
T:
1124 to pass the driving test!
1125 Everybody!
S1:
1126 boys
T:
1127 just boys
S1:
1128 all the boys at 18 must go to
army for two years
T:
1129 right
S1:
1130 after finishing they can drive
T:
1131 right ok

1132 so it is obligatory for you to
have an army certificate to get a
driving license

1133 oh that'S: let's think about this
then

1134 Err first of all K A and H

1135 which ones are necessary and
obligatory

1136 and maybe if there is something
that is not there that is necessary
and obligatory you can tell us
KNOW about it ok?

1137 do you want? A!

S1:
1138 know how to drive obligatory

T:
1139 ok

S:
1140 and practice before the test

T:
1141 ok err a good idea or!

S:
1142 a good idea

T:
1143 right, ok

S:
1144 practice before

T:
1145 yeah I think you should practice
before shouldn't you?

S1:
1146 yeah

T:
1147 ok good

S:
1148 take an eye test is obligatory

T:
1149 right, so the eye test is
obligatory

S:
1150 and taking the written test is
obligatory

T:
1151 ok, so there is a theory test, ok

S:
1152 and a medical examination is a
good idea

T:
1153 right, so it's not obligatory it's
not required by law

S4:
1154 not necessary

T:
1155 but it's a good idea

1156 so perhaps you should have a
medical test ok?

S1:
1157 and have a passport for a birth
certificate is obligatory

T:
1158 right obligatory
1159 Proof of identification ID

S1:
1160 and pass the driving test

T:
1161 right ok
1162 pass the driving test

S1:
1163 have a high school diploma I
think is not necessary

T:
1164 right so you don't have to have
particular qualifications

S1:
1165 a good idea huh

T:
1166 ok

S1:
1167 own a car(.) not necessary

T:
1168 right not necessary to own a car

S1:
1169 a good idea

T:
1170 a good idea only a good idea
1171 Ok, and what about an
international drivers' license
1172 is that obligatory?

S1:
1173 a good idea!

T:
1174 no

S4:
1175 no!

S1:
1176 no obligatory

T:
1177 not obligatory

S1:
1178 no

T:
1179 ok, and I think there is one more
thing, is it obligatory?

S1:
1180 is obligatory for boys

T:
1181 [for boys ok
1182 tell us what-

S1:

1183 every boy must err must err
military(.) army for two years
1184 after passing the two years he
can [+ + +] to the military and
can pass the driving test
1185 And get married err get a job
1186 is very important
S4:
1187 get a passport
T:
1188 right
S1:
1189 and somebody like me he can
get get a army certificate
without go to army,
T:
1190
[right
S1:
1191 as a som- because some people
err only(.) only son like me
1192 I'm the only son for my parent
and
S4:
1193
[they don't need to
S1:
1194 yeah
T:
1195 [right so if you are the only
child you don't need to do that
S1:
1196 no this is a new law about three
or four years
1197 [+ + +] and can get can get an
army certificate without go to
the army
T:
1198 right
S4:
1199 sorry if their fathers after the-
over the sixteen years they don't
need to go to the army
S1:
1200 and some people with the father
up to sixty years old
T:
1201 ok, so it's obligatory to have an
army certificate
S4:
1202 yes it is obligatory
T:
1203 right, ok
S1:
1204 very important for boy huh
T:
1205 for boys but not obligatory for
girls
S4:
1206 they are nothing huh without
that huh
T:
1207 right ok, good
1208 What about in Thailand
1209 Is it the same?
S2:
1210 yeah slightly different
T:
1211 ok, how is it different then?
1212 Tell us how it's different!
S2:
1213 you have to test err(.) colour
blind blind colours
T:
1214 ah colour blindness
1215 That's interesting
S2:
1216 because we have to know the
traffic light
1217 which one huh
T:
1218 ok, right, ok
1219 so it's obligatory to have a test
for colour blindness
1220 which err males, Men or- boys
and men suffer from colour
blindness only
1221 I think it's only! males
S:
1222 [yeah
T:
1223 suffer from colour blindness
S5:
1224 men?
T:
1225 I think so
S5:
1226 only for men?
T:
1227 I think it's only males
1228 I think about this
1229 go away and look this up
because I think it's true that
only men, suffer from colour
blindness
S5:
1230 no not in our country but
T:
1231 [no no
in all countries

S5: 1232 ah
T: 1233 think about it
1234 investigate it
1235 Ok, so you hav- so it is obligatory to have a test for colour blindness ok!
1236 any other differences?
S2: 1237 others are the same
1238 just we don't have to pass military
S5: 1239 [right
T: 1240 right, so you don't need a military!
S5: 1241 [no
T: 1242 certificate
S2: 1243 just an ID card
T: 1244 just an ID card
1245 So you don't have to have a passport!
S5: 1246 no
T: 1247 right you can have an- you just need your ID card
S5: 1248 passport, when we go abroad
T: 1249 just abroad yeah?
S5: 1250 yeah
T: 1251 ok
S5: 1252 just an ID card
T: 1253 right
S1: 1254 another difference between UK and Iran
1255 in UK must be 17 years old,
T: 1256 [17 years to get provisional license
S1: 1257 yeah but in Iran 18 years old
T: 1258 ok, so you must be older
S1: 1259 yeah 18 years old,
T: 1260 [yeah
S1: 1261 finish 17 and 18 finish 18 and
T: 1262 [right
S1: 1263 get a certificate
T: 1264 yeah do you know about do you know what you do if you have to get a driving license in the UK?
1265 Do you know anything about this?
1266 You can err start to drive at 17
1267 you get a provisional license
S4: 1268 yeah
T: 1269 do you know anything else about how to get a license?
1270 What you need to do?
1271 In the UK?
S2: 1272 to to somebody who have three years
S4: 1273 [ah British,
S2: 1274 [British license
S4: 1275 [you have to be British
S2: 1276 after three years
T: 1277 ok, so- you mean you have to be a British citizen!
S2: 1278 no we have to learn for
1279 whoever who can that is three years with license
T: 1280 ok, all right, I see your teacher right, learning from a professional
S2: 1281 [somebody support you, in UK
1282 somebody support you for getting certificate

T: 1283 get a driving license
 S2: 1284 right ok, so somebody
 T: 1285 [like a teacher like you doctor or teacher
 S2: 1286 right
 T: 1287 yeah and confirm your signature but in Iran no
 S2: 1288 [it's not necessary
 T: 1289 no not necessary
 S2: 1290 ok
 T: 1291 if you've got points [+ + +] in your license
 S2: 1292 oh you mean when you passed your driving test if you do something wrong you get points on your license
 T: 1293 Hello! Somebody is looking through the window never mind
 S2: 1294 Do you mean after you passed your driving test if you do something wrong the police put-
 T: 1295 [record
 S2: 1296 yeah, you have a driving record and they put points
 T: 1297 so if you go through if you don't stop at a red light, they give you six points on your license,
 S2: 1298 and you get up to,
 T: 1299 [+ + +] when you have done something wrong you can't drive
 S2: 1300 yeah if you get a certain number of points then you lose your license for the time and you have to reapply for your license
 T: 1301 Is that true in(.) Thailand?
 S2: 1302 If you drive badly do you get points?
 T: 1303 yeah you get a written card and you have to pay
 T: 1304 oh you have to pay a fine ok right
 S4: 1305 if you drive for a year I think goodly we:
 T: 1306 [well
 S4: 1307 yes well I'm sorry huh
 T: 1308 we don't need(.) we don't need extra money for tax to pay extra money
 S4: 1309 oh ok right
 T: 1310 You get tax reduction
 S4: 1311 yes tax
 T: 1312 [if you drive well yeah
 S4: 1313 [for a year tax reduction
 T: 1314 what a good idea
 SS: 1315 yeah
 T: 1316 we don't have that in the UK
 S5: 1317 in our country if you pay insurance for car yeah
 T: 1318 but and you have contract about 2 years or 4 year you never have accident but you claim in the full money
 S5: 1319 [no claim bonus yeah
 T: 1320 and you have the tax interest on the top
 S5: 1321 not like in England your country every year you pay and money gone
 T: 1322 just discount for five percent every car every year and then gone even when they never have accident
 S5: 1323 ok, yeah, you do get a non claims bonus
 T: 1324 I think it's the same
 S5: 1325 so if you are a good driver you do get,

S5: 1326 [bonus five percent
T: 1327 yeah ok,
S5: 1328 you pay 400 you get back forty
S2: 1329 in Thailand we don't have get the money back
T: 1330 you don't get money back!
S5: 1331 (shifts to Thai)
T: 1332 come on in English it's better for you
1333 if M learn you learn more I think
1334 what you are saying is that it's better in Thailand for getting money for being a good driver
S5: 1335 yes err
T: 1336 [but you don't agree
S5: 1337 get money back yeah in some bank and
T: 1338 [right
S5: 1339 they do that now they have been doing that from now many people have quite new
T: 1340 ok it's a new law?
S5: 1341 not a new law
1342 quite new business
T: 1343 right, Good just before we finish I want to say one final thing about must
1344 must is often used for obligation
1345 but when you feel a personal obligation so for example if my grandma is in hospital and she is ill and I haven't been to see her for a long time, ok!
1346 I can say to you I must do this
1347 it doesn't mean it's required by law
1348 it mean I feel a sense of personal obligation to do this
1349 and this is not on the sheet but these are actually the things that I think you need to be aware of
1350 so when you're talking about your personal feeling about obligation
1351 so it's not the law ok!
1352 it's not obligatory for me and visit my grandma but I feel that I must
1353 that is obligatory for me because I like my grandma and she is not very well ok!
1354 so this is quite a common use of must when you feel an obligation personally to something
S4: 1355 I must practice English
T: 1356 right yeah I must practice my English
1357 if I don't practice my English I won't improve
1358 this not the law
1359 it's your sense of something that you feel obliged to do
S5: 1360 thank you!
T: 1361 ok, you're welcome
1362 So there are a few differences between must and have to ok?
S: 1363 yeah
S4: 1364 we can say to somebody you have to do something?
T: 1365 yeah, I mean have to is often more general obligation
1366 yeah if you think that they should do it on a personal level I would say
S4: 1367 [no sorry I mean to advise somebody we can say you have to do something
T: 1368 no
1369 which modal verb do you use if you advise somebody?

1370 Which verb?
S2:
1371 should
T:
1372 you should yeah?
1373 I think that you should put a
coat on because it's cold outside
1374 this is advice
1375 it's not obligation,
S4:
1376 polite huh
T:
1377 yeah ok!
1378 so there are some important
differences as well
1379 but the general meaning is the
same
1380 Ok right we'll finish up now
1381 I won't be teaching next year
but have enjoyed teaching the
class ok!
1382 and I wish you all the best to
your English in the future

T2 (3rd Session)

T:
1 right well I'll start by asking you to think about in your country
2 anything that you have to do
3 anything that you must do
4 anything that you are obliged to do in your daily life
5 for example well do you have to go to school!
6 Do you have to carry an identity card!
7 What kinds of things like that things that are necessary for you to do
8 can you give me some examples?
S:
9 for one particular or for all the people of the country?
T:
10 generally or individually
11 if it is individually then obviously it's your family I suppose isn't it?
12 Yes I don't mind
13 I was thinking more generally but it doesn't matter any examples would be-
S:
14
[I have to go to the work every morning
T:
15 I have to go to work every morning yes! Yes
16 Why do you have to go to work every morning?
S:
17 in order to earn money
T:
18 huh but it is possible not to work in your country!
S:
19 well yeah
T:
20 yes
S:
21 [+ + +]
T:
22 yes
SS:
23 huh
S:
24 but you [+ + +]
T:
25 but what?

S:
26 [+ + +] it's not I mean you- you live
T:
27
[you live(.)yes right
S:
28 this rich
T:
29 so you have- yes so you have to go to work
30 in that sense you have to go to work every morning for all sorts of reasons all right
31 Let me have another example thank you!
32 What do you have to do in your country?
S:
33 I run motorcycle [+ + +]
34 I have to carry my ID card and the driving license and I have to wear a hat
T:
35 right
36 Yes a helmet
S:
37 helmet
T:
38 we call it a helmet yes
39 So if you drive!
S:
40 a motorcycle
T:
41 a motorcycle yes
42 tell me again!
S:
43 motorcycle
T:
44 yes what do you have to do?
S:
45 if I drive motorcycle I have to carry my ID card and err drive license
T:
46
[driving license
S:
47 driving license
T:
48 yeah
S:
49 and err
T:
50 [and!(.)a hat
S:
51 a hat

T: 52 yes (.) we call it a safety helmet
(writes on the board)
53 like you see people wearing when
they are building
54 working on the building sight
55 so it is compulsory is it?
56 do you know the word compulsory?
57 No.
58 Right (writes on the board) you have
to do it
59 it is- is it a law?

S: 60 yes a law

T: 61 yes compulsory by law
62 so by law in Taiwan if you drive a
motorcycle ride a motorcycle you
must have your ID card
63 you must have driving license and
you must wear a safety helmet right
64 I think it is very similar in this
country
65 safety helmet or driving helmet is
required and certainly a license but
perhaps not the ID card
66 because we don't have ID cards yet
in this country
67 but we are talking about it
68 we may have them soon, Good
69 Another example!

S: 70 driving license is the most important
thing
71 yeah driving license

T: 72 you have to carry it with you!

S: 73 yes although we have ID card but
when you have driving license it
could [+ + +] for both

T: 74 oh a driving license can serve as an

S: 75
[can serve as an ID as well

T: 76 right I see
77 so you have to carry it with you!

S: 78 yeah

T: 79 when you are driving!

S: 80 driving or for any other things

81 it also as an ID card

T: 82 right ok
83 well in this country it is not
necessary for us
84 we are not obliged to carry the
driving license with us all the time
85 but if the police stop you and say is
this your car or you were driving too
fast or too slow
86 where is your driving license!
87 you say well I don't have it with me
88 and then they will give you a piece
of paper and say you must bring
your driving license to the police
station within three days
89 but you don't have to carry it with
you all the time
90 but you have to produce it within a
time if they question

S: 91 but in Taiwan you have to carry it
every day everywhere

T: 92 all the time

S: 93 or you will be fined

T: 94 oh right you will be fined! yes

S: 95 if a policeman catch you and ask for
your driving license

T: 96 right so that's a very important thing
yes
97 We will talk about driving license
later on
98 can you give me some more
examples in different places
99 now anything that is necessary
100 anything that you are obliged to do
in your country!

S: 101 in Japan children aged from seven to
fifteen have to go to school also
compulsory education

T: 102 right on seven to fifteen so
compulsory education from 7 to 15
103 Is that the same in other places?
104 what about in your country?

S: 105 seven

T: 106 seven

107 And!
S: 108 Libya from six
T: 109 and six in Libya yeah
110 we are different here
111 it's on five
112 on five to 16 is necessary to go to school
113 you are obliged to go to school have to go to school ok?
114 think of something now that err is prohibited (writes on the board)
115 you know the word prohibited?
116 What does that mean?
S: 117 [+ + +]
T: 118 if something prohibited
S: 119 not allowed
T: 120 not allowed
121 yes not allowed by law
S: 122 forbidden
T: 123 forbidden yes
124 by law yes or by your parents if you're thinking of a family situation
125 prohibited it is not allowed
126 If there is a law then it's illegal isn't it?
127 Legal illegal
128 so give me some examples of things that are prohibited?
S: 129 drinking under 18
T: 130 drinking under 18 in!
S: 131 Korea
T: 132 yeah is prohibited
133 all right yes!
S: 134 kill someone
T: 135 huh murder huh yes
SS: 136 huh
T: 137 it is prohibited yes huh yes
138 any more examples?

139 That's generally I think throughout the countries the same with drinking
140 I think it's 18 here as well
S: 141 in my country if you are under 18 you cannot go out after 12 o'clock in the evening
T: 142 right midnight right
S: 143 why?
S: 144 because you are [+ + +]
145 I don't know
146 whether if you go out you have to carry your ID card and the police will check
147 if you are under 18 you have to be caught and sent back to your home [+ + +] your parents
T: 148 huh right that's what we call a curfew (writes on the board)
149 a curfew means people in certain circumstances or in certain ages are not allowed to be out on the streets
S: 150 [they can go out with their parents
T: 151 oh right but not alone
152 Not by themselves
153 so a curfew for young people in Taiwan after midnight
154 that means they must not be out unless they are with their parents
155 They're thinking of introducing that idea in this country
156 because we have a lot of problems with specially young people
157 sometimes younger than that
158 may be 13, 14 years old who live in poor areas
159 and don't have anything to do and perhaps their parents are not terribly interested in what they are doing
160 and they cause a lot of trouble
161 they are breaking into houses or steal from shops or something like that
162 so the government is thinking that they will introduce a curfew
S: 163 living on the streets
T:

164 hum?
S: 165 they must live in the streets as the [+ + +]
T: 166 oh yes well I don't think he was quite sleepy
167 and that is another reason for that yes
168 In order to prevent all these kinds of social trouble there will be a curfew for children
169 I think may be 13 14 17 that they should be at home after 9 o'clock
S: 170 huh
T: 171 nine nine yes
172 after nine o'clock in the evening or something like
173 that bit that is not the law yet
174 but they are thinking of introducing it
175 Oh this is very interesting
176 give me another example to move on to something [+ + +]
177 now for example the things which are prohibited
178 what's prohibited in your part of the world?
S: 179 in our country
T: 180 yes
S: 181 young couple only can have one child [+ + +]
182 they will fined or be fired
T: 183 will be fined or?
S: 184 [or fired
T: 185 fired! Right
SS: 186 fired
T: 187 say it again!
S: 188 one child(.)ha!
S: 189 [+ + +] a new law about this
S: 190 what is the new law?
S:

191 one couple one child
S1: 192 if your husband is the only child for his family and his wife also only child for her family they can have two children
S: 193 what happens if they have three?
S: 194 they three!
195 They are fined
T: 196 to pay a fine (writes on the board)
197 if you drive your car and do something wrong you may have to pay a fine
198 it's a penalty
199 it's a penalty
S: 200 [in some other countries if you have more children you have(.)some money
T: 201 [they will give you more money yes Huh
SS: 202 huh
T: 203 yes!
S: 204 but even you work for the government you may have a lot of money to give another- you cannot
S: 205 because of the number of population
206 I can understand
S: 207 yeah
T: 208 so at present you must not have more than one child
209 but you think there is a different regulation
S: 210 [a new several months
T: 211 [right
S: 212 ago
T: 213 yes if each parent is a single child then those they
S:

214
 T: [they can have more than one
 215 they can have more than one right
 216 can you explain why they have
 introduced that new law?
 S:
 217 some scientists said at 2015 China
 will
 218 the number of birth and the
 T:
 219 [number of deaths
 S:
 220 number of death of people so the
 new law about the population
 T:
 221 I see that's interesting
 222 yes I had to hear about that
 223 I have heard some Chinese students
 here
 224 saying they think it's not a good
 idea only to be able- allow to have
 one child
 225 because it puts a lot of pressure on
 that child
 226 and the child doesn't learn to share
 or to socialise very well
 227 so they may not say this in china
 228 but they say it here because-
 229 it's interesting
 230 that's going to change
 231 yes because the balance of the
 population would be settled by then
 ok
 232 well those were very interesting
 examples of things that are allowed
 or are not allowed
 233 to things that are compulsory
 234 things that are prohibited
 235 I thought you would tell us about
 alcohol in your country
 S:
 236
 [yeah I was thinking about
 something yeah!
 T:
 237 yes
 S:
 238 I think yeah people want
 239 it's forbidden
 T:
 240 [forbidden forbidden
 yes ok
 S:
 241 [+ + +]

S:
 242 yeah in all other Arabic Islamic
 countries
 S:
 243 you are person catholic Mohammad
 244 you want to drink a glass of wine!
 S:
 245 yeah, a glass of wine?
 246 I don't know
 247 I think (.) I would I wouldn't get it
 248 so I don't know huh
 SS:
 249 huh
 S:
 250 [+ + +]
 S:
 251 what is the fine?
 T:
 252 [the law says no
 alcohol
 S:
 253 the law says about but [+ + +]
 T:
 254 so you would have to be very
 careful when you go there huh
 S:
 255 I think the law is not very strict
 T:
 256 not very strict
 257 not very strict but there is?
 S:
 258
 [there is a fine
 T:
 259 what-
 S:
 260 about
 T:
 261 [what's the penalty?
 262 You will be fined?
 S:
 263 nothing
 264 I won't tell to anybody huh
 T:
 265 huh right
 S:
 266 but people don't like
 T:
 267 [alcohol
 S:
 268 alcohol
 T:
 269 [but still
 S:
 270 to get drunk I think

271 but if you enjoying yourself and nobody err
T: 272 [maybe perh-
S: 273 recognise huh
T: 274 perhaps the law is more liberal in one or two countries than it is in some of the others yeah
S: 275 yeah
T: 276 but it's a religious law
S: 277 more than
T: 278 [more than a a state law
279 so religious law
280 so perhaps it might not apply to people who are from of different religion
S: 281 [I think in other religions also but because it's
T: 282 [yes
S: 283 if they don't be then through education or something it become a law even in Christians
T: 284 yes
S: 285 it is not allowed
T: 286 right so a quite a few different things obviously that we discovered here about family size and alcohol and ID card
S: 287 [may I ask a question about China?
T: 288 yes
S: 289 is your government any law about homosexuals
290 because I hear someone told me if you you say you are homosexual in your country you will be fined
T: 291 in your country?

S: 292 no [+ + +]
T: 293 oh a company!
294 Right you will be fired
S: 295 yes
SS: 296 huh (for some time the student are talking and laughing)
S: 297 it's legal now
T: 298 it's legal now
S: 299 no! not legal it's err
T: 300 [illegal
S: 301 no, it's err
S: 302 [privacy
S: 303 not illness
T: 304 no, is there a law about it?
S: 305 yes there is the government said it's not err
306 look at- err I said ok not illness
307 it's not an illness
308 I think it's normal
T: 309 [normal
S: 310 normal people
T: 311 right
S: 312 yes err just a month ago there is a new law
T: 313 oh right!
S: 314 no [+ + +]
T: 315 change of law
S: 316 it's a year after that
T: 317 oh right right just when it came here
S: 318 it's good news for him
SS: 319 huh

S:
320 something [+ + +] as the religion or,
T:
321
[yes
S:
322 may be there is no law
323 it is not law but there is punishment
I think
324 and there is no respect from the
society at all
T:
325 oh right
S:
326 because we think that this is
something against the nature of
humanity
T:
327 right yes yes
S:
328 it's not against the law or against
humanity law
329 something very strange
T:
330 right yes well we had law about-
against that until the 1960s
331 and then the law changed here
332 In 1967 I think it was
333 And then it was not illegal any more
334 it used to be illegal before that
335 and people would be fined or go to
prison before that
336 but after 1967 the law changed and
it's therefore not illegal now
337 but again a lot of religious feel that
it is not appropriate huh
338 but it's there is no law against it any
more
S:
339 I heard some married
340 homosexual married done in the
church
T:
341 I don't think so
342 they may have a ceremony
343 but it would not be the same as
marriage
344 because marriage can only take
place between two people who can
have children
345 and that's the marriage by law
346 you can have a legal arrangement if
you want to
347 but you cannot have the same thing
as a marriage

S:
348
[although in this country you agreed
but the society look at these things
that as
T:
349
[it's divided yes yes
350 there is a divided opinion on that yes
S:
351 [+ + +] is to allow homosexual
couples to adopt children
T:
352
[children
S:
353 it is the: [+ + +] in Spain now
S:
354 I don't know this class would allows
to discuss in this
T:
355
[we might have to finish this
material and come back to this topic
I think
356 otherwise the material will not
SS:
357 [huh huh huh
T:
358 but obviously that's an interesting
topic for discussion
359 There is a couple here two men who
have adopted children from
America,
360 it hasn't been allowed for them to
adopt children who are born here
361 but the American law must be
different
362 and so they have adopted children
from America
363 yes the law is changing isn't it!
364 Quite a lot according to opinion
365 and perhaps changing in China err
quite quickly for all sorts of reasons
366 not least is the fact that they're
going to have the Olympic Games in
a three year time
367 and I think the government would
want to be able to say this
368 we do this and we do this and seems
to fit in with other countries yeah
369 Good ok
370 now I want you to imagine a
different situation

371 I want you to imagine that there is somebody that you know in your home country

372 and they that person is preparing to come to this country

373 and that person wants to know what should he or she bring to this country

374 what is allowed

375 what is not allowed

376 what would you suggest that would be a good thing to bring and that kind of things

377 and again because your countries are quite different err you might think of different things

378 err can you tell me the sort of things that you would say err that person should bring or must bring with him or her,

379 what are necessary in terms of the law?

S:
380 a passport

T:
381 a passport yes obviously

S:
382 [+ + +]

T:
383 coming from your country to this country

S:
384 ah to this country!

T:
385 yes

S:
386 an umbrella

T:
387 an umbrella huh

SS:
388 huh

T:
389 compulsory?

SS:
390 huh

S:
391 essential

T:
392 essential! Huh

S:
393 I came by one from the airport

T:
394 ok we would say that there is a law that says you have to bring a passport

395 err what would you say here?

S:
396 visa

T:
397 essential but not a law

S:
398 not a law yes

T:
399 sorry!

S:
400 a visa

T:
401 a visa yes

S:
402 valid visa

T:
403 valid visa yes

404 what other kinds of things might we recommend?

S:
405 a coat

T:
406 a coat

407 which which category come under?

S:
408 below that

T:
409 with this

S:
410 travellers' checks

T:
411 travellers' check yes

412 where would you put that?

S:
413 there is no law

414 but it's err there is money yeah is used

T:
415 do many people actually use travellers' checks these days?

416 Just explain what a travellers' check is?

S:
417 sorry?

T:
418 can you explain what it is!

S:
419 yeah

SS:
420 everybody know?

T:
421 may be not just in case!

S:
422 err it's money but you: you can not use directly

423 you first have to change, in a bank
424 and it is perfect
425 because when you want to get a
money you have to sign it
426 err(.)the cashier so if somebody err
stole:

T:
427
[steal

S:
428 steal your travellers' checks this
person err will not able to (.) to
check for money
429 and you can (.) err get again your
traveller checkers

T:
430 [you can claim it back yeah

S:
431 so it's a perfect to protect you the err
(.) from err this
432 Perfect

T:
433 so you obtain your travellers' checks
in your own country!

S:
434
[yes

T:
435 go to your own bank
436 they know how much money you've
got
437 or you tell them and then they give
you the checks
438 you sign for them in your country
439 do a specimen signature on the
check
440 and then you carry them here
441 but what do we use today perhaps
instead of travellers' checks!

S:
442 credit cards!

T:
443 credit cards yes,
444 so essential admit?
445 Travellers' checks or credit cards
(writes on the board)

S:
446 both

T:
447 yes both so that you can use your
credit card anywhere
448 err provided you have money in the
bank in one place huh

449 got money in the bank at home you
can use your credit card anywhere
yes?

S:
450 a friend called me
451 he brought a lot of money from
Taiwan travellers' checks
452 so he had to sign [+ + +] for
example for 40 or 50 pages

SS:
453 huh

T:
454 yes he had to yes
455 because they want to see your
signature

S:
456
[+ + +]

T:
457 yes but it is a safe way of carrying
money around
458 and I have the same situation
because I I sign Chinese Bank of
English [+ + +]

459 and I have a small amount about
five pounds and ten pounds huh

T:
460 a lot of them yeah
461 the useful thing about travellers
checks is that if there is a change in
the level of the currency
462 if the value of the currency changes
it may change in your favour or it
may change the other way
463 and you may lose money
464 and you can keep them for some
time and wait until the level is err is
in your favour right
465 we talked about driving license
before
466 would you recommend! err

SS:
467
[international drivers' license

T:
468 international driving license
essential!
469 By law!

SS:
470 essential but not by law

T:
471 right I am sure you can think of a
few more, as well

S:
472 no claim insurance

T: 473 oh right yes bring your-
474 if you have been driving at home
beforehand bring a record of your
car insurance in case you're
qualified for no claim discount here
475 because insurance is very expensive
476 car insurance is very expensive here
477 so it would be a good thing to
recommend your friend yes
478 Well let's of things now that are
prohibited
479 what you would not (writes on the
board)

S:
480 drugs

T:
481 drugs

S:
482 raw fish

SS:
483 raw fish huh

T:
484 what?

SS:
485 raw fish

T:
486 rubbish!

S:
487 raw fish

T:
488 raw fish huh
489 right is that [+ + +] did you try?

S:
490 no no

T:
491 huh

S:
492 I mean, I [+ + +] intend bring law

T:
493 [raw

S:
494 raw products

T:
495 raw products [writes on the board]
yes ok
496 that's ok
497 raw products yes
498 unless they are in! sealed bags
499 You know vacuumed packed sealed
500 then you can bring them in
501 but you cannot bring raw products
whether it's fish or fruit
502 err you cannot bring them

503 it has to be sealed and packed in a
certain way
504 vacuum packed
505 and then there can be no transfer of
germs
506 yes, anything else?
507 sometimes they give you a card on
the aeroplane
508 and with the list of things that you
must not bring into the country
509 can you remember any more things
on that card?

S:
510 plants

T:
511 plants! yes, ok

S:
512 animals

SS:
513 huh

S:
514 yes!

T:
515 yes! True yeah they have to go,

S:
516
[animal, you are not allowed to
bring them!]

S:
517 [+ + +]

T:
518 err you can bring but you would
have to make arrangements

S:
519 [yeah

T:
520 beforehand for the animal to stay in
a special place for a period of time
so that it can be seen that this animal
does not have any disease
521 now what is that period of time
called?
522 do you know?

S:
523 quarantine

T:
524 quarantine yes
525 the same word in English as well
526 Quarantine (writes on the board)
527 if you bring an animal they will say
sorry we cannot allow this animal in
528 it must stay in a special place in a
[canals]
529 or in special wherever they want to
look after these things

530 A period of time for dog is six months,
531 it's quite a long time,
532 to make sure that the dogs do not bring any disease in the country
533 but I think this law is changing because of the European law
534 and I think it's now possible to take dogs between here and some countries in the European union
535 or it is about to become possible to do that
536 and I am not quite sure of the status at the moment
537 but normally yes these things are banned
538 anything else that is banned?
539 suppose we could put here guns couldn't we!
540 Fire arms, along with the bombs (writes on the board)
541 anything else?
542 no well there are more some suggestions on here
543 so have a look at this sheet
544 and the situation that I have just described for you in step one
545 at the top of that page
546 A friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK
547 as he or she is not a British citizen she will have to deal with immigrations and custom when she enters the UK
548 she doesn't have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a bag pack
549 a bag pack you know that!
550 Here is some of things she is thinking of taking with her
551 And there you have a list, of things some of them you have mentioned
552 there is one thing here that is essential which we have not put here
553 what's that one?
554 in this list look for the one more essential thing, by law
555 On the whole I would say

S:
556 essential?

T:
557 essential legally req- sorry there is one legally required thing here

S:
558 passport

T:
559 we've got the passport
560 we've got the visa

S:
561 [+ + +]

T:
562 sorry say that again?

S:
563 a return airline ticket

T:
564 a return airline ticket yes (writes on the board)
565 you only have a single
566 if you have a single ticket into this country you may have problems with customs and immigration

S:
567 since if you are a tourist maybe you need return

T:
568
[if you are coming as a student yes
569 but this says for a short vacation a short holiday yes
570 Short holiday you will need to show that you are going home huh
571 because your visa is for holiday

S:
572 yeah

S:
573 a credit card

T:
574 not by law
575 a credit card no
576 if we put credit card here it's useful
577 yes useful to have one
578 and in special circumstances a bank account
579 with a lot of money in it to show that you can get yourself home again
580 Right, well
581 I think you will know all those items there
582 would you like to put them in the right boxes
583 one two three and four
584 put the items at the top there into a suitable box
585 it's necessary and obligatory first one,
586 and then things which are prohibited
587 and then you've got number three and number four (individual work)

T: 588 that?

S: 589 yes

T: 590 hiking boots
591 hiking is when you go walking in the countryside
592 they are special boots
593 hiking boots for walking

S: 594 surf board?

T: 595 does anybody know what a surf board is?

S: 596 a sport on the sea and a board using a board

T: 597 you stand on a board and try to ride on the waves on the surf good [individual work continues]

T: 598 I think you are noting an interesting err (.) spelling situation here
599 how is the word driving license spelt?
600 With the S why?
601 huh this is the UK spelling and this is the US spelling
602 we use this spelling here
603 in America they use that
604 We use this spelling only for the verbs and this spelling for the nouns

S: 605 and drivers' and driving

T: 606 oh drivers' license or driving license
607 we use driving license here yes
608 Driving license right
609 just check with your partner or somebody sitting next to you that you've got them all in the same boxes
610 or if you've got different things and decide why they are different!
611 just compare your lists when you're finished (pair work)

T: 612 do you remember this is for a holiday
613 your friend is coming for a holiday not as UK as student
614 Yes It's slightly different

T: 615 we had just an interesting point
616 that of course if we are within Europe
617 a European travelling from one European country to another then this column will be different
618 because err visas and on some of these are not required but generally it's correct
619 Good and it says in step number three
620 here that if we can think of some more things
621 which we have already done in fact
622 you thought of some more things before
623 you can put these things into your boxes as well if there are any more
624 so you could add some to here
625 certainly add some to the box which says it is prohibited
626 And err any other things that we'd mentioned there
627 Right now a short time to do a little bit of writing
628 just together
629 it says at the bottom step four
630 write sentences about one or two item in each box explaining why you think they belong in that box
631 Right?
632 So you do sentence number one box
633 you do a sentence for number two box three box and number four box right?

S: 634 how about fresh fruit in England?

T: 635 err no I think to be processed
636 it is still law
637 it is the processed that is all right

S: 638 because I want to ask my mother

T: 639 oh right to bring

S: 640 [fresh fruit]

T: 641 yeah you could try and you know they may take it away from her
642 Ok get your sentences ready now (pair work continues)

T:

643 have done your sentences would you like to tell me what you have done?
 S:
 644 you should bring credit card to pay to get money [+ + +] whatever
 T:
 645 writes on the board yes?
 S:
 646 it is a good idea to bring umbrella because the weather is changeable
 T:
 647
 [changeable
 648 an umbrella
 S:
 649 an umbrella
 T:
 650 box number two?
 651 Not yet box number one!
 652 Who is ready? ok?
 S:
 653 you you have bring your surf board with you
 T:
 654 let put it other way round
 655 a surf board a suit and what?
 S:
 656 [+ + +]
 T:
 657 [+ + +] to bring with you (end of side A)
 S:
 658 depends on the people I think
 T:
 659 [depends on the person yes
 S:
 660 yeah
 T:
 661 yes all right
 S:
 662 someone likes music [+ + +]
 663 they must bring the tapes and the CDs
 T:
 664
 [yes
 S:
 665 and the err laptop computer for someone is
 T:
 666
 [essential
 S:

667 yes
 T:
 668 huh say you would find it hard to give advice about what is necessary and
 S:
 669
 [yes
 T:
 670 yes what you would have to say (writes on the board)
 671 if you really need your laptop or your music or: err then you should take it
 672 That's I think the sort of advice you would give in number four
 673 because as you say it's hard to know somebody might be coming here
 674 because they want to do some surfing
 675 so in that case they would really want to bring their surf board with them
 676 yeah so you have to find a way of saying if you really need you really need it
 677 or if you really feel you need your laptop computer then take it with you
 678 You will have to decide
 679 yes but it's not necessary is it?
 680 Really yes and that would apply to the music as well
 681 Right sentence- box number one!
 S:
 682 passport and the tourist visa are essential
 683 then [+ + +] through the immigration and the customs
 T:
 684 yes ok are essential
 685 yes did you write another one?
 S:
 686 no continue custom in order to enter this country
 T:
 687 that's right
 688 I'm just drawing your attention
 689 so you can decide for yourself on that one
 690 Don't forget to bring it if you want to do something
 691 it's a good idea to bring it
 692 you should bring a credit card

693 what else have we got now in
number err!
S:
694 number two
T:
695 two
S:
696 it is prohibited to carry fresh fruit
into UK
T:
697 ok that's right it is prohibited yeah
S:
698 because fresh fruit is easy to decay
T:
699 yes it is not
700 just as I think in case there are
germs or viruses or bacteria or that
kinds of things
701 usually it is not just a decay
702 it's it's decayed fruit
703 don't worry about it yes huh
704 it's prohibited to bring or to carry
fresh fruit into UK for various
reasons yes?
S:
705 yes
T:
706 ok did you have a prohibited one?
Yeah!
S:
707 the same one
T:
708 fresh fruit!
709 How did you- what words did you
use?
S:
710 you cannot bring fresh fruit into the
UK because it may have some
germs
T:
711 all right, ok again because it may
have some disease
712 so there is another way of saying it
713 you cannot bring
714 it is prohibited to bring
715 we can say these things in different
ways
716 so I've underlined a particular err
part of the sentence which use this
kind of language about what is
prohibited
717 and what is not possible
718 and what is possible
719 if you turn over to the other side of
this page

720 at this point you will see other ways
of expressing these ideas
721 we use some here
722 we haven't necessarily used the ones
are in here
723 but again you will find other ways
of expressing what is allowed and
what is not allowed
724 Ok, for example you can tell your
friend you must have a passport
725 you said ah essential
726 you have to have a passport
727 you've got to have a passport
728 As you know, Err for number two
we've got different alternatives here
729 it is prohibited to bring
730 you cannot bring
731 you are not allowed to bring
732 well cannot is here
733 you must not bring
734 for number three oh number four
really
735 this is the can
736 this is what you were looking for
isn't it?
737 In number four you can bring this if
you want to,
738 if you really feel you need it
739 perhaps the word you were
searching for there is you can bring
a surf board if you want to
740 you can bring your music
741 you can bring not that you are
physically able to bring but if you
want to you can do it
742 because everybody can carry this or
can carry that
743 It means that it possible if you want
to
744 you can if you want to
745 So that's perhaps what we need to
add here (writes on the board)
746 for number three!
747 We've got that idea here,
748 you should bring a credit card
749 it's a good idea
750 don't forget to bring a map
751 you've got the problem with the surf
board
752 here again it's also mentioned in the
last one
753 you don't have to bring
754 That's an interesting use of have to
isn't it?

755 Meaning you can if you want to but
you don't have to bring a surf board
756 it's up to you
757 you can decide
758 surf board is too heavy to bring with
you or you don't have to
759 So remember that one
760 if you didn't know it before you
don't have to
761 now can we make up some more
sentences about the other things that
we haven't used in quite the same
way here
762 in the first box you must have a
passport
763 you have to have a passport
764 you've got to have a passport
765 give me that structure with another
word
766 what else do you have to have? you!
S:
767 have to have [+ + +]
T:
768 no just think of the things that we,
listed before(.)
769 passport let me hear it in a sentence!
S:
770 you have to have a visa
T:
771 [you have to
have a visa yes
772 you must have a visa right
773 things that are not allowed we've
mentioned fresh fruit
774 you cannot bring fresh fruit or you
must not bring raw fish
775 I think the general principle there is
you must not bring unprocessed
food if you want a general category
776 You must not bring unprocessed
food
777 Processed food is all right but not
unprocessed food
778 If you want to in the next one that's
F
779 you can bring a surf board
780 what else can you bring if you want
to?
S:
781 you can bring a map of UK
T:
782 you can bring of of the UK
783 you can bring?
784 What were you arguing about here!
785 You bring your?

S:
786 [hiking boots
T:
787 hiking boots if you want to
788 you can bring your hiking boots,
789 you can bring your CDs and your
music
S:
790 you can bring an umbrella
T:
791 you can bring an umbrella yes huh
792 that's perhaps better with the next
one
793 you should bring an umbrella
because it's perhaps more necessary
than the surf board and the music
S:
794 but you can buy one from the airport
T:
795 and you can buy one here yes, yes
796 Remember the last one
797 you don't have to bring
798 you don't have to bring if you were
not familiar with that
799 Ok, right,
800 and finally let's go back to the idea
of a driving license which did come
up in the conversation earlier in the
lesson
801 we want to think about how we
obtain a driving license in your
country
802 which of the following are necessary
or obligatory obliged
803 you are obliged
804 it is obligatory
805 Which of the following are
necessary and obligatory in your
country
806 can you discuss those again in the
groups that you were in,
807 tell each other what is necessary
808 what is obligatory (pair work)
T:
809 all right are you!
810 Have you decided?
811 finished?
S:
812 yes
T:
813 would you like to tell us now
814 what the situation is in your
country?
815 we may not have for all of time
816 K! tell us about Korea!

817 We heard a lot about Korea today
S:
818 you have to have a high school diploma
T:
819 you do need?
S:
820 yes
S:
821 we don't need
T:
822 huh you don't need a high school diploma
S:
823 to own a car is not necessary
T:
824 you don't need to own a car?
S:
825 yes
T:
826 right it is not necessary
827 what about the other things?
S:
828 the other things is the same as Korea
T:
829 the other things are all true in Korea yes!
S:
830 yes
T:
831 you need to know all the other things
S:
832 an international driving license is not necessary
T:
833 right yes(.)not necessary to have a-
834 but you cannot have an international driving else until you've got your own license
835 so the last three are not necessary
836 Is that what you are saying! I
837 t's not required in Korea right
838 What about in Japan Y?
S:
839 you have to pass the driving test!
T:
840 no no the last three
841 No no we're talking about these over here huh
842 Y! what is the situation in Japan?
S:
843 in Japan you don't have to pass a medical examination
T:

844 you don't need to take a medical examination
845 not necessarily right
S:
846 you don't need a passport but [+ + +]
T:
847 ID?
S:
848 ID err to: (.) to err
T:
849 [to what?
S:
850 to confirm your address
T:
851 oh right to confirm your address
852 right I see and your identity
S:
853 [card
T:
854 birth certificate
855 do you need a birth-
856 what certificate?
S:
857 birth
T:
858 oh birth certificate
859 passport or a birth certificate
860 Do you need
S:
861 [I forgot to watch
T:
862 [you forgot!
S:
863 what kind of ID
T:
864 ID right perhaps a passport
865 What do the other Japanese think about that?
S:
866 yes
T:
867 yes you need an ID?
S:
868 yes
T:
869 do you carry I-
870 is it necessary to carry identity cards in Japan?
S:
871 no
S:

872 no we don't have identity cards in order to get a drivers' license we have to carry something

T: 873 [to show

S: 874 to show yes

T: 875 to prove who you are all right
876 And in China?
877 Which ones do you not need here?
878 Which are not necessary!

S: 879 eye test is unnecessary

T: 880 is?

S: 881 is unnecessary

T: 882 unnecessary!

S: 883 yes I am not sure now but five years ago was unnecessary

T: 884 right

S: 885 other things are like Japan [+ + +]
886 about two months ago my parents learned to drive
887 and they need err I would say this err master [+ + +]

T: 888
[a single print

S: 889 yes a single print
890 err you must drive about seventy hours
891 and then you can take the test after that

T: 892 [right

S: 893 is more re- restrict no no restricted

T: 894
[restricted?

S: 895 yeah

T: 896 yeah there are more restorations
5 that's another word we haven't used yet isn't it? (writes on the board)
897 restrictions yes

S: 898 [+ + +]

T: 899 right but you think an eye test is necessary?

S: 900 yes

T: 901 ok, eye test in Spain?

S: 902 e test yeah

T: 903 is necessary!

S: 904 three of these things said the last

T: 905 [the
last three!

S: 906 yeah high school diploma and

T: 907 [yeah,
yeah Taiwan?

S: 908 yes of course

T: 909 what?
910 Yes!

S: 911 eye test and medical examination

T: 912 medical examination as well as an eye test?

S: 913 but is not very serious one
914 just check your weight and height and [+ + +]

T: 915 yes right Gabon?

S: 916 yes

T: 917 what?

S: 918 eye test

T: 919 eye test is necessary yeah
920 yeah and the other things as well yes

S: 921 we have to practice before the test

T: 922
[you have to practice

S:

923 [yes about one month every day
about one hour

T:
924 [because they tell you
how much,
925 you said seventy hours in in
seventy hours are required in China

S:
926 yes you must enter the driving
school and make appointment with
the school to take enough hours to
driving

T:
927 [to get the
practice like an airline pilot

S:
928 [yes

T:
929 pass to fly a certain number of
hours before he gets his pilot
license
930 so it's similar to that I see

S:
931 I wonder if you have it in Britain

T:
932 you need to practice until you can
pass the test
933 but it doesn't say how long you
must practice for!
934 There is no particular length of time
or number of hours
935 when you think you are ready to
pass the test or when your
instructor think you are ready to
pass the test then you take the test
936 but it doesn't matter how long you
have been driving
937 And in Libya?

S:
938 practising before the test is up to
you

T:
939 [yes that's- yes

S:
940 is of course depends on

T:
941 [how much
you need to practice isn't it!

S:
942 yeah

T:
943 [yes

S:
944 but if you know how to drive you
don't need

T:
945 [you don't- no

S:
946 but eye test is essential with
medical examination in one
certificate and,

T:
947 [altogether yes

S:
948 yes you don't have to take writing
test

T:
949 [oh

S:
950 you don't have to have a high
school diploma

T:
951 [no, no

S:
952 or an international drivers' license

T:
953 right right good
954 Well slightly different in each
country
955 each country has its own
requirements
956 and as you see at the end we want
to discuss about what we know
about getting a drivers' license in
this country
957 has anybody actually applied for a
driving license in this country?

S:
958 I bring international license and
drive with it not here

T:
959 you brought an international license
with you and you can drive with
that license
960 for how long?

S:
961 for one year

T:
962 oh a year?
963 I thought it was six months!

S:
964 you have to renew it

T:

965 yes, renew?
S:
966 yes
T:
967 so how would you renew?
968 How would you renew it?
S:
969 I ask one of my friends in my country to extend it
T:
970 huh you go home and you get another one
971 and you come back yes
972 that's well that prevents you from having to take one here
973 but I thought the law used to say you can drive in this country on an international licence for six months
974 but maybe now it is a year
975 I don't know that might have changed
976 and then but before that time is finished you have to
S:
977
[you have pass the test in Britain
T:
978
[that's right
979 I think that was the case that if you are going to stay in this country for longer than six months or the year I don't know which that is you must take lessons and pass
S:
980
[you cannot international driver license for ever huh
T:
981 no, but if you go home to your country and you renew your own license there so that is still valid
982 you can have another international license
983 I am afraid that's one way of avoiding the regulations huh of avoiding the regulations here but people do it
984 But do be careful they ask you how long have you been here you might say the wrong thing if they ask you that
S:
985 I think it's
T:

986 [it's all right?
S:
987 not problem
T:
988 [well I'm not sure
S:
989 when you want to make insurance or something they ask you what license do you have
990 you just say an international driving license
991 they don't ask an further questions
T:
992 but that's the first time
993 but if you want to renew that and you still have an international license insurance people say but you have an international license last year
994 then it might be a problem with the regulations
995 then so actually just check the [+ + +] just in case
996 do you know what other things are required then for obtaining a license in this country?
997 is hard for you to know this isn't it?
998 If you haven't already applied for one
999 Nobody has applied for a license all right well
S:
1000 we may apply in future
T:
1001 you may need to apply in the near future
1002 yes if you have an international license
1003 as I say you are permitted to drive here if you think you can drive
1004 I think it's also it's a good idea if you are going to take your British license to have a few lessons so that you do the things in the way they want you to do them here
1005 because if you don't for example look in the mirror and put the hand brake on and looking in your side mirror in the right order the thing the way they want you to do here they may fail you
1006 you have to do things in the right way
1007 So it's a good idea to take a few lessons here

1008 not to learn how to drive but just to know what is expected in the routine and the way they do it here
1009 and if you do that I'm sure you will pass your exam
1010 we don't have a medical test here
1011 it's not essential for you to have a medical test
1012 You must state on the application for your form if you have a medical condition
1013 and they list some medical conditions
1014 if you have that then you must state it
1015 But you do not have a medical test
1016 but when you have your driving test they will- the driving examiner would say what's the number of that car at a certain distance away
1017 can you read the number plate of that car
1018 and I think it's 25 yards or something like that, with glasses or without glasses
1019 if you normally wear glasses can you read that number plate
1020 if you normally don't wear glasses if you can read,
1021 so that is the eye test really
1022 it's not a big eye test
1023 it's just a test whether you can read the number plate from a long distance
1024 and there is now a written test
1025 a practical test and a written test multiple choice answers
1026 err you must pay a fee
1027 Of course and I don't know what that fee is
1028 I am sorry I should have checked on that but I don't know
1029 do you have any more questions about what is necessary in order to pass the test or to drive or to get a license in this country?
S:
1030 how could we apply to get a license?
T:
1031 you get a form from the post office
1032 the post office supplies most forms for all sorts of things
1033 but if you have been taking lessons with a driving school they might do that err for you
1034 they will make the arrangements any other question about what you need to do?
S:
1035 is the test easy?
T:
1036 huh I sup-
S:
1037 [in Spain is not easy
T:
1038 um
S:
1039 and I have- I don't have drivers' license
T:
1040 oh right
S:
1041 I have thought really to get the drivers' license here
T:
1042 oh right yes
1043 And then you can take it and drive at home well,
1044 it tests you on the things that you need to be able to do
1045 and err if you can't do those things or if you seem to be- if you can do the things but you still seem very nervous they may think he is too nervous to drive on the road
1046 sorry go and have more lessons
1047 get some more experience and come back and try again
1048 If you don't seem to be confident behind the wheel then they will fail you
1049 but you just have to show that you drive and you are a careful driver
1050 You look through the mirror and check your mirror
1051 and- but you can stop suddenly
1052 they test you to see whether you can do an emergency stop
1053 that's what they call it
S:
1054 what the language is?
T:
1055 well the language is necessary in the necessary in the written test
1056 this is why they introduced the written test

1057 because nowadays there are a lot of
people from many different
countries also from Europe where
they speak a different language or
from other countries
1058 and sometimes it was felt that they
couldn't always read all the signs
that were necessary
1059 so now you have a written test
based on the highway code
1060 and I said a multiple choice
questions
1061 I don't know what's it like
1062 because I didn't need to take a
written take a written test when I
took my driving license
1063 when I got my driving license it
was not necessary to take a written
test
1064 it was just you have to show that
you can turn
1065 a three point turn
1066 and that you can reverse around the
corner
1067 to go back around the corner I
think-
1068 I don't know these days whether
you have to drive on the motorway
in your driving test now
1069 before you didn't
1070 you were allowed to go on the
motorway when you felt confident
to go on motorway
1071 But perhaps there is also a time
when you drive on the motorway
1072 because that's so different from the
ordinary road
1073 so I don't- I can't answer that
question whether it is difficult or
not
1074 but if you can drive take a few
lessons and see if you feel
confident or not

S:

1075 very confident?

T:

1076 you can drive?

S:

1077 not

T:

1078 have you learned?

1079 Have you tired to learn to drive?

1080 oh you haven't at all

1081 I thought you have tried but not

S:

1082 no

T:

1083 you don't know anything right

1084 Ok, well I think we leave that
discussion about a driving license
and what is necessary and what is
not necessary

1085 and that actually take us to the end
of A's materials

1086 so thank you very much for letting
us use those materials

1087 we haven't got very much time left

1088 obviously we spent longer than I
thought

1089 but I think it will be at this stage
useful to look at the notes that the
university the language department
has devised for this same topic

1090 the article that I gave you yesterday

1091 please bring it on Friday and we
will look at that on Friday

T3 (3rd Session)

T:
1 now on the board modal auxiliary verbs
2 if I say modal verbs what do you think of?
3 what do you think of?
S1:
4 what's this?
T:
5 what do you think of?
S2:
6 about the modal verbs?
T:
7 yeah! what does it mean?
8 What do you:
S:
9 perhaps
T:
10 [what is a modal auxiliary verb?
S:
11 [+ + +]
T:
12 sub- for example!
S:
13 emphasise your your
T:
14 [emphasise!
S:
15 yes must do or:
T:
16 ok, we've got must
S:
17 should
T:
18 should
S:
19 can't might
T:
20 ok any more?
S:
21 could
T:
22 ok everybody has got a copy?
23 I have always wondered what modal auxiliary means
24 as far as I know modal from mode the way
25 the way something is done affecting the way some- some idea is expressed
26 auxiliary is just a help just a help

27 so a verb that helps the main verb and as you know all of these are combined with the_main verb
28 That's all that means
29 it's a bit [+ + +] that but that's all it means
30 You know the language of- the meaning of grammar terms because I think it might help you
31 Right, let's have a look at the opening task
32 A friend of yours from your country of origin is planning a short vacation in the UK
33 as she is not a British could be a he, as she is not a British citizen she will have to deal with immigration and customs when she enters the UK
34 she doesn't have much room to pack a lot of things because she is planning to travel with just a backpack
35 here are some of the things she is thinking of taking with her
36 A passport a map of the UK an umbrella a surf board a laptop computer hiking boots fresh fruit a credit card an international drivers' license a tourist visa book s about the UK photographs of his or her hometown a return airline ticket tapes and CDs the kitchen sink the family dog
SS:
37 huh
T:
38 etc, she has a lot of things
39 she is planning
40 do you all understand what those things are? First
S:
41 yeah
T:
42 anything anything
S:
43 [surf board
T:
44 good I thought that it might be the odd thing
45 What's the surfboard?
46 do you know?
S:
47 no
T:

48 oh good you know about surfing the net yeah!

SS:
49 yes

T:
50 well where is that come from? Because this-

S:
51 [surfing the sea

T:
52 surfing on the sea!

S:
53 yes

T:
54 you know surfing?

S:
55 yes

T:
56 what's a surfboard?

S:
57 equipment for surfing

T:
58 ah it could- yeah equipment the err not a tool
59 I think we would say equipment
60 a piece of equipment
61 what is it exactly?
62 how do you describe it?

S:
63 a board

T:
64 it's a board!

SS:
65 huh

T:
66 and what a board is?
67 yeah you know what a surf board is then
68 B? have you seen a surf board on film or TV?

S:
69 oh yeah

T:
70 oh well ok anybody been surfing?
71 I've never had one- I mean in England it is not so

SS:
72 [huh

T:
73 well they do it in Cornwall where the sea is good ok
74 I think it would be good
75 anymore that you are not sure what it is?

S:
76 hike?

T:
77 [hiking boots

S:
78 boots for hiking

SS:
79 huh

T:
80 what's hiking?

S:
81 walk a long time on on walk
82 walk a long time- a long trip

T:
83 yeah!

S:
84 is like tracking?

T:
85 ah! Yes, Tracking yes it is
86 It's walking a long way usually in the country in the mountains
87 you need good boots for that
88 Ok, well the idea is you decide what is necessary and what is not or what is less necessary Ok!
89 you might want to talk with a partner and decide how necessary these items are ok?
90 just have a couple of minutes discuss with a neighbour (pair work)

T:
91 right! If you-
92 can I have just your attention!
93 If you had a rough conversation about what is very important what's not important and so on could you then look at step two?
94 Where you've got the grammatical options,
95 the language options to express the differing importance of these things
96 Use the boxes below to help her organise the things she wants to take to the UK
97 with your partner put them in the boxes where you think they belong
98 so we've got one
99 it's necessary and obligatory
100 You can't enter the UK without this
101 You must take this with you
102 or the negative it's prohibited yeah
103 you must not take this into the UK
104 Three it's a good idea to bring this
105 You should take this with you

106 or four it's ok to bring this but it isn't really necessary you don't have to take this

107 so decide which of the items go in each category with your partner (pair work)

T:
108 can I ask how are you doing?
109 right maybe we should exchange some ideas at this point, Yeah?
110 Let's speak about the first one
111 I think what we think of would be as the strongest obligation,
112 it is necessary and obligatory we can't enter the UK without this
113 You must take this with you
114 A and T! what did you think would go into this category?

S:
115 you mean number one?

T:
116 yeah the first category

S:
117 a passport a tourist visa a credit card and the return ticket

T:
118 can you practice the structure you must!
119 you must!
120 You know as well what we're doing
121 you must take!

S:
122 you must take a passport with you
123 You must take a err tou- tourist visa with you

T:
124 T! anything else the first category?

S:
125 you must take a return airline ticket with you

T:
126 yeah huh I suppose yeah
127 so you must take a passport
128 you must have a visa
129 not a visa card a visa

SS:
130 huh

T:
131 some people think they must have a visa card

SS:
132 yeah yeah

T:
133 anything else?

S:
134 credit you must have a credit card with you

T:
135 you must take a credit card with you
136 What do you think?

S1:
137 should we don't have to

T:
138 you don't have to

S:
139 don't bring a credit with you

T:
140 why do you say you must H?
141 I'm interested!

S:
142 when you take a credit card you will be [+ + +]

SS:
143 huh

T:
144 well I thought- we can argue with that it's useful to have

S:
145 yeah

T:
146 why don't you think it should go into one T?

S:
147 you had better to bring a credit card but you don't have to because (.) at the: immigration we don't have to show the credit card

SS:
148 yes

T:
149 not yet not yet

SS:
150 huh

T:
151 may be since they check your credit status on actually everything
152 now we know in [+ + +] yeah
153 so we would make a distinction between say a passport without which you cannot enter (.) and the credit card
154 So we- some of you would put credit card into a different category

S:
155 yeah

T:
156 ok, we will come to-
157 is- is anyone any other differences from what A and T said?

S:

158 I don't think the return ticket is must
T:
159 is not a must
S:
160 is not must should I don't think must
S1:
161 a return ticket means you can use
this ticket from your country to the
UK and from the UK back to your
country
S2:
162 we think is must this situation
because it's a sort err sorry is a short
vacation in the UK
163 so because the situation we think is-
is err must is obligatory
S3:
164 perhaps err before you coming-
come to UK you have already get the
visa from the immigration office
165 that is- err- that is- that [+ + +] you
should stay here you can stay here
166 so you don't have the return ticket,
167 before err before the- your visa
empired empired you must go
T:
168 excuse me before the visa!
S3:
169 visa is empired
T:
170 expired
S3:
171 expired
T:
172 I think expired yes
S:
173 expired
S4:
174 it's just a short vacation
S5:
175 the situation is that it is talking
about a short vacation so you need
the ticket to return to your home to
home
T:
176 we have to be careful to make a
distinction between things which
are good to do and the things which
are necessary
S:
177 yes
T:
178 things which are even probable,
179 it's probable that this person would
have a return ticket

180 but is it absolutely obligatory?
181 Would you say it's obligatory?
S:
182 no
S:
183 no
T:
184 it's an open question
185 From whose point of view!
186 Form whose point of view is it
obligatory!
187 Well you enter the country you
show your passport or your visa
S:
188
[yes
T:
189 yeah do you show your ticket?
SS:
190 no
T:
191 no, so where does the obligation
come from for the ticket?
S:
192 yeah it's your own obligation
T:
193 that- that might be worth thinking
about
194 It'll be worth thinking as we go
along, perhaps this sense of
obligation
S:
195 because just you pass through the-
the country
196 that means you err [+ + +] the
country and go to the third country
you must show the ticket
197 but if you just go- go to travel this
country you don't show this
T:
198 but are you sure in the ticket like you
when you catch the train they want
you- you proving that you take your
seat in that sense!
S:
199 yeah
T:
200 ok, so we think certainly here in the
first category you must take a
passport
201 you must have a visa
202 T! another?
203 No just those two!
204 Ok, now it's prohibited by law so
negative here

205 D! I! did you have anything in this category?

S: 206 fresh fruit

T: 207 so what would we say?
208 You! can you express it?

S: 209 err

T: 210 can you express it? you!

S: 211 yes (.) you m- you must not take fresh fruit into the UK

T: 212 good you must not take fresh fruit,
213 is that true?
214 Do you agree?

S: 215 yes

T: 216 yeah [+ + +] ok, do you know why?
217 Does anyone know why?

S: 218 perhaps fruit err fruit have the- err pest or other err other chemist- chemisted err poison poison materials

T: 219 oh toxins!

S: 220 toxins

T: 221 toxins maybe

S: 222 [+ + +]

T: 223 yes dangerous chemicals poisons
224 you're not supposed to transfer plants and seed are you?
225 I don't think
226 Plants and seeds I don't think you can just take seeds and plants from country to country
227 I don't know

S: 228 [unless you certify

T: 229 oh, right

S: 230 there is a process

T: 231 [to have a license

S: 232 yeah yeah

T: 233 ok, err so you must not take fresh fruit yeah?

234 Otherwise you have fruit and mouth disease, Yeah!

SS: 235 huh

T: 236 ok huh anything else that's prohibited?

S: 237 CDs and tapes sometimes, it depends

T: 238 you must not bring CDs and tapes into the UK?

S: 239 sometimes

T: 240 ah what do you mean by sometimes?
241 don't you think you mean some types?

SS: 242 huh

T: 243 you see the difference
244 I don't think on Wednesdays,

SS: 245 [huh

T: 246 Wednesdays in the first month of the year you can't bring CDs
247 you mean some types of CDs
248 Ok, is that right?

S: 249 yeah

T: 250 what- what?
251 For example?
252 What do you think you might be prevented from bringing?

S: 253 tapes and CDs which are not licensed

T: 254 ah that's well expressed
255 Not officially licensed
256 what do you- can you explain that more?

S: 257 huh I think it means the copyright

T: 258 oh the copyright
259 what do we call those?
260 do you know?

S:

261 sorry?
T: 262 what do we call them when they are not officially:
S: 263 [pirate
T: 264 pirate yes pirating
SS: 265 pirating
T: 266 a pirated copy
267 yes black market type copies
268 You know black market?
S: 269 yeah
T: 270 a good point actually
271 it's a good point
272 So you must not bring pirated copies
S: 273
[yes
T: 274 of CDs of!
S: 275 [or if they have a forbidden content
T: 276 ha
SS: 277 huh
T: 278 forbidden content
279 A colleague of mine she went-
280 she's err she's a professor in Spanish history
281 she went to Mexico
282 She brought back some videos Mexican cinema
283 and the police were very interested what was on these videos yeah!
284 So they asked her about it
285 You made a good point actually
286 We might think well what's wrong with CDs and videos but in fact
S: 287
[yes
T: 288 so how could we express this?
289 [+ + +] what's prohibited you!
S: 290 you mustn't take fresh fruit and take come CDs to UK into the UK

T: 291 no that's all tapes and CDs
292 certainly fresh fruit and vegetables ok
293 but then would be tapes and CDs
294 what we are going to say?
S: 295 you must not take pirate copies on:
S1: 296
[pirated
T: 297 could be pirate copies actually yes
S: 298 into the UK
T: 299 but not just pirate copies
300 That's what I wanted to sum up
301 we mentioned other
S: 302 and CDs with forbidden content
T: 303 ah and CDs or!
S: 304 tapes
T: 305 yeah tapes with forbidden content such as pornography
306 Specific yeah
307 Anything else which is prohibited?
S: 308 steroids drugs alcohol
T: 309 oh yes hold on I was going to- add to-
310 we are going through these items
311 I was going to ask you there were other things we would put into this category
312 so hold on those things
313 you are absolutely right
314 we'll come to that
315 Any more in category two?
316 no err K! G! what about the third category things which should- it is a good idea to bring with you?
317 Can you give me the structure?
318 You should, K!
S: 319 you should take a map of the UK
T: 320 speak up please!
S: 321 you should take a map of the UK with you

T:
322 G!

S:
323 and you should take credit card with you

T:
324 K!

S:
325 you should take books about the UK

T:
326 no more!
327 Everyone agree?
328 Any differences from the list we have?

S:
329 international drivers' license

T:
330 if you have it

SS:
331 huh

S:
332 I think umbrella is a good idea to bring into UK

T:
333 huh you should take an umbrella
334 A good idea
335 Any other!
336 Did you notice the credit card was in this category
337 what will be a good idea you should
338 anything else from the list?
339 Any differences?
340 Any disagreements about this?

S:
341 you should take a err you should take hiking boots

T:
342 hiking boots?
343 do you agree?

S:
344 we haven't decided about

T:
345 [you haven't decided about hiking boots
346 Any any?
347 you don't think so!

S:
348 no unless the weekend

T:
349 can you explain why you don't think?

S:
350 no I agree with her
351 I think you should take hiking boots as well

T:
352 oh, I thought you said you didn't
353 sorry I misheard

SS:
354 huh

S:
355 [+ + +] is going to do ok?

T:
356 [yeah yeah
how many people go on hiking in this room?
357 How many people go on hiking apart from me?
358 do you understand the question?

SS:
359 yeah

T:
360 just me and K!
361 you are lazy people

SS:
362 huh

T:
363 lazy sleepy shopping TV watching

SS:
364 huh

T:
365 lambs
366 lizards
367 really I'm amazed
368 Amazing country like China
369 beautiful country like Japan with mountains (.) and shopping

SS:
370 huh

T:
371 in Britain which ah some beautiful countryside too you must,
372 but that might be a recommendation
373 you must go to Scotland
374 You must take some boots
375 but you must also take a waterproof
376 Yes, All right, ok,
377 now, Four it's ok to bring it but it isn't really necessary
378 Steve what did you think?

S:
379 photographs, surf board

T:
380 [can you give them the structure please?

S:
381 yes it's ok to bring photographs surf board and a laptop,

T:

382 [use the modal please!
383 use the modal for better practice we
could say that
384 but we will only put it in the
colloquial model
S:
385 ok, you don't have to take
photographs surf board and a
computer laptop
T:
386 err laptop computer
S:
387 laptop computer
T:
388 yes always that laptop computer
389 Does anyone agree with that list?
390 you don't have to take a surf board
391 you don't have to take a laptop
computer
392 and you don't have to take
photographs of your hometown
393 Anything else that you don't have
to?
S:
394 but we only put the return ticket
SS:
395 huh
T:
396 huh he is worried- he is really
worried about the ticket
SS:
397 huh
T:
398 but we don't want to take it away
from you
SS:
399 huh
T:
400 you will get back to China
SS:
401 huh
T:
402 he's very worried
403 we will all put some money together
to get you don't worry
404 Where are we going to put the return
ticket
405 a good point
SS:
406 huh
T:
407 it's a good point because if we
haven't put it in the first one the
absolute obligation where do we put
it?
408 L?
S:
409 in my opinion it's the third one
T:
410 [the
third one
S:
411 yeah
T:
412 you should,
S:
413 you should err airline
T:
414 [you should
have a return airline ticket with you
415 It's a damn good idea
SS:
416 huh
T:
417 yeah
418 Now we mentioned err Steve began
to mention other things which we
might put into this
419 Would you like to just err well let's
just do it now quite quickly
420 Let's sort of these-
421 anything else that you think you
must have that is not on the list?
422 Anything that you think you must
bring with you
423 In the strongest sense of obligation?
424 I thought M might say mobile phone
SS:
425 huh
T:
426 just teasing
427 nothing that is really necessary
obligatory?
428 do you need any any medical
certification any record of injections
or?
429 some countries you need
S:
430 [some
countries
T:
431 you need a document which says you
are insured or, do you need to be
insured?
S:
432 insured?
T:

433 yes, are you allowed to enter without!

S: 434 no

T: 435 no you don't need!

S: 436 it's up to you

T: 437 it's up to you ok, ok
438 do you think of anything else?

S: 439 kish

T: 440 kish?

S: 441 cash

T: 442 oh cash

SS: 443 huh

T: 444 you- you must have cash

S: 445 for [+ + +] I think so

T: 446 is that!

S: 447 [but there is not obligation

T: 448 [it's a different sense of obligation, isn't it!
449 Really this is external isn't it!
450 What are the official requirements
451 are you must have a passport
452 you must have a visa
453 yeah then we've got these other things which you might feel err absolutely necessary

S: 454 but sometimes you must have the: if have a: address in the UK
455 because the immigration office will check the address in UK when enter this country

T: 456 um

S: 457 this is necessary

T: 458 I think that's when you are coming for longer
459 this is a personal visiting
460 so it's perhaps slightly different yes

S:

461 just [+ + +]

T: 462 right yes

S: 463 the address is not err

T: 464 [is not obligatory is it?
465 Not necessary ok
466 anything that you'd add to the prohibitions?
467 You were mentioning something
468 tell us what you must not and use the structure please
469 you must not bring?

S: 470 you must not bring drugs, spirits weapons to the UK

T: 471 all drug?

S: 472 err some drug that forbidden certain drugs

T: 473 certain drugs

S: 474 and no all of the spirits is not prohibited
475 You can bring some: [+ + +] of spirit

T: 476 you can, can't you?
477 You can bring err

S: 478 [can bring

T: 479 yeah is- is what they call it?
480 They call it a quota or a legal amount isn't it?
481 you can bring in

SS: 482 um

T: 483 quota yeah an acceptable amount
484 There is another [+ + +]
485 so I think you can bring Sakae
486 or what is a Chinese spirit? [+ + +]

S: 487 [+ + +]

T: 488 anything else you must not bring in?

S: 489 you cannot bring the things which are prohibited in Washington

T: 490 in Washington?

S:
491 yeah some kinds of animals,
T:
492 [ah yeah
S:
493 are prohibited
T:
494 animals yes we have mentioned that
actually have we?
495 I think we must not bring animals
except under license!
SS:
496 yeah
T:
497 or arrangement probably because
you-
S:
498 [some crops
T:
499 crops products
S:
500 and some magazines with forbidden
content
T:
501 magazines books
502 printed matter
503 we could say in general printed
matter,
504 printed material with forbidden
content,
SS:
505 [yes
T:
506 you must not bring in
507 anything else?
508 ok, what do you think is a good idea
to bring with you?
S:
509 [+ + +]
T:
510 maybe just have a thirty second with
your partner and think of some of
things perhaps which are not on the
list (pair work)
T:
511 right, I think this is the category
which could probably the longest list
and with the biggest disagreement
S:
512 yeah
T:
513 I have someone
514 I have been on trips with her and for
her it's essential to have a hair dryer
SS:
515 huh
T:
516 you know it's not just a good idea
right?
517 so a good idea to bring into the UK
with you boyfriend or girl friend!
SS:
518 huh
T:
519 no!
SS:
520 huh
T:
521 because trouble
SS:
522 huh
T:
523 any [+ + +] that you can add?
S:
524 yeah [+ + +]
T:
525 let's move on quickly
SS:
526 huh
T:
527 D! what did you and K!
528 what did you decide would be a good
idea that is not on the list or what
extra items?
529 Can you with a:
530 try to practice the structure
531 it's a good idea to!
532 Or you should!
S:
533 I think it's a good idea to bring some
medicine
T:
534 Medicine!
S:
535 Some gifts
T:
536 Some gifts!
S:
537 film
T:
538 oh add film
S:
539 and camera
T:
540 do you think you need to bring film?
S:
541 yes
T:
542 why why bring film?
S:

543 yes [+ + +]
T: 544 I cannot buy a camera because it's expensive
545 and you don't want to replace it
546 but why film?
S: 547 because I think the film in China is much cheaper
T: 548 ah a good reason
549 A good idea if coming from China where it is cheaper to bring film with you
550 Yes Americans tend to do that too because it's cheaper [+ + +] in Scottish place yeah [+ + +]
551 so really good
552 Camera!
553 you think it's good idea! you should take film as well!
554 It's cheaper!
S: 555 and some gift
T: 556 some gifts?
557 Ha! That's a good idea!
558 To bring some gifts
559 Why?
S: 560 you need to
T: 561 [+ + +]
SS: 562 huh
S: 563 something you can only buy in your hometown,
T: 564
[ah
S: 565 you can take
T: 566 because it would be special for people here
567 Yeah good point good point [+ + +]
568 here we've got different things
569 M! what did you think?
S: 570 you should take a photocopy of passport
T: 571 [ah! Intelligent yeah
572 Good idea
573 sorry I stopped you
574 go on please!
S: 575 and cash
T: 576 oh yes this where cash is coming yeah!
577 How much cash?
SS: 578 huh
S: 579 five hundred pounds
T: 580 five hundred pounds?
SS: 581 huh
T: 582 [+ + +] ok, do you know for how long is she coming for?
583 Short vacation, we don't know how short?
584 so cash would depend a little
585 Cash in in Japanese Yen or in in Sterling?
S: 586 Sterling
T: 587 in pounds
S: 588 pounds yes
T: 589 so D! in your own currency or in travellers' checks or in!
590 you said cash actually which is not
SS: 591 [+ + +]
T: 592 let's think about this
593 yes the difference between- I think
594 do you use travellers' checks?
S: 595 yes
T: 596 it's safer yeah!
S: 597 yeah
S: 598 you won't high err high fees check-
T: 599
[you pay for it don't you yeah?
S: 600 [+ + +]
T:

601 but do you wanna carry 500 pounds
in cash with you?

SS:
602 aha

T:
603 is that a good idea?
604 what do you think?

S:
605 it's very dangerous

T:
606 I think this [+ + +] some people
carry lots of money in their wallets
and things

SS:
607
[huh

T:
608 some don't
609 what do you think
610 what's your habit M!
611 do you like cash in your pocket or
do you take travellers' checks to!

S:
612 cash

SS:
613 huh

T:
614 yeah yeah huh ok, so cash with you!
615 Ok, what else should you bring K!
616 what did you- anything that don't
have to

S:
617 we should take [+ + +]

T:
618 that's a good idea huh

S:
619 insurance

T:
620 some insurance!
621 Sorry we can't hear you
622 please speak up

S:
623 some insurance documents

T:
624 oh insurance documents
625 Yeah just a paper which says you
are insured
626 Good, so you should take insurance
627 you should bring cash,
628 you should bring camera,
629 you should bring film, if you wanna
save money on film
630 T!

S:
631 it's a good idea to bring a knife

T:
632 it's a good idea to bring a knife!

S:
633 err

T:
634 [you've heard about Leeds1
635 you've heard about Leeds

S:
636 the reason is that a swiz army yeah
err

T:
637
[does everyone know what that is?

SS:
638 yes

T:
639 why E?

S:
640 I think is very useful err you [+ + +]

SS:
641 huh

T:
642 but we heard earlier
643 you probably must not bring a
weapon into the UK
644 you must not bring a weapon
645 what's the difference?

S:
646 it's not a weapon

T:
647 it's got very nasty,

SS:
648 [huh

T:
649 you could do all kinds of,

SS:
650 [huh

T:
651 it's a good idea actually
652 Useful knives aren't they!
653 I've had one for about 21 years
actually
654 I take camping with me
655 very useful good idea
656 Any more idea A!
657 about what you should- you think
you should bring!

S:
658 you should take an electric
dictionary

T:
659 electric dictionary!

S:
660 electronic

T:

661 electronic I think it is
 S:
 662 electronic
 T:
 663 electronic, it's got a chip [+ + +]
 664 electric means it just works with
 electricity just like me
 SS:
 665 huh
 T:
 666 but electronic means got a memory
 which I don't have
 SS:
 667 huh
 T:
 668 why?
 669 why should you take an electronic
 dictionary?
 670 Why electronic dictionary?
 671 Not just a dictionary
 S:
 672 it's light
 T:
 673 true lighter than the book good point
 S:
 674 many- err you can't understand the
 meaning of sign
 T:
 675
 [aha! very basic things like signs you
 can
 SS:
 676 huh
 T:
 677 ha! good idea
 678 Any more?
 S:
 679 I think you should take some snack
 from you country
 T:
 680 take a snack!
 S:
 681 yes huh perhaps you can't get used
 of the foreign foods
 T:
 682 yeah maybe for a short visit, you've
 got realistic yeah
 683 because?
 S:
 684 I don't know [+ + +]
 T:
 685 make you feel better!
 S:
 686 yes you feel better

687 and sometimes specially you carry
 some chocolate
 688 it can give you some energy and [+ +
 +]
 T:
 689 well expressed yeah
 690 I think that's true because you get
 tired in another country
 691 It's tiring being in another country
 692 specially when you've first arrived
 stressful
 SS:
 693 [yes
 T:
 694 anything else you should?
 S:
 695 yes
 T:
 696 what H!
 S:
 697 you should your CD
 T:
 698 your CV?
 S:
 699 yeah, for [+ + +]
 T:
 700 for a short visit!
 701 For a short visit to the UK!
 S:
 702 yeah
 T:
 703 because!
 S:
 704 when you come err with a
 professional objective
 T:
 705 oh yes
 S:
 706 yeah
 T:
 707 you come with a professional
 objective
 S:
 708 objective
 T:
 709 do you know- sorry yes please ask if
 you- I thought- that's why I wrote it
 up
 710 Do you know what CV is?
 S:
 711 resume!
 T:
 712 Americans call it resume
 713 a curriculum vita
 714 the Latin word

715 summary of your career
716 I think you are right
717 with a professional objective
718 if you go to a country with a professional objective then it's a good idea
719 What else should you take?
720 anything?
721 Anything else?

S:
722 you should take an opener

T:
723 opener?

S:
724 yeah

T:
725 what kind of opener?

T:
726 just for open the bottle

SS:
727 huh (end of side A)

S:
728 a light a light

T:
729 a lighter a lighter yeah
730 what about an address book?
731 Or is this obvious?
732 An address book!
733 Do you think you should take easy to forget and then all your addresses and telephone numbers of your friends?

S:
734 yeah

T:
735 no?
736 an address book!
737 not necessary
738 What about an adapter?
739 an electrical adapter?

SS:
740 huh

T:
741 yes as any one being caught out bring something and find it can't work
742 Very easy to do
743 What is the voltage in China any way?

S:
744 [+ + +]

T:
745 oh that's lucky

S:
746 charges about 41

S1:
747 two four

S2:
748 here is 24

T:
749 two twelve?
750 Here is two forty (an argument between Chinese students)

T:
751 did you get that the Chinese?

SS:
752 huh

T:
753 they don't seem to be sure [+ + +]
754 may be it's different in different places
755 In Japan I think is it two twenty?

S:
756 no it's one hundred and ten

T:
757 oh it's one hundred and ten like America
758 so you need adapters for everything

S:
759
[yeah

T:
760 it's a big thing
761 Yeah! So may be you must take it if you want to bring some electrical
762 may be you need it
763 All right let's go on
764 I think we were at step four
765 turn over on the back of the first page
766 now we've got some examples-
767 what I want you to do write about something- items you've chosen
768 they could be from the list or any other ones added to the list in different categories
769 Could you write a sentence and an explanation why!
770 the example here you must have a passport right!
771 It's necessary and then the explanation why we use must here
772 Alternatives you have to have a passport or you have got to,
773 you know those!
774 You've got to have a visa
775 you've got to have a passport
776 you have to you must
777 Something is necessary and obligatory

- 778 something that is strongly required often by law
- 779 You must not or you mustn't of course bring fresh fruit
- 780 and you get you CANNOT
- 781 It is not possible
- 782 it is not allowed
- 783 Use cannot to show something prohibited absolutely
- 784 not permitted often by law
- 785 That's a negative you must not
- 786 You can bring a surf board
- 787 something is permitted
- 788 You should bring a credit card
- 789 Use should to show something is a good idea
- 790 You don't have to for something can give people problems
- 791 it's negative
- 792 it's absence of a prohibition
- 793 Or absence of obligation
- 794 excuse me, Absence of obligation
- 795 You do not have to it shows that something is permitted but not necessary
- 796 you can do this if you want to but not required to, Right
- 797 So can you go back to into your categories and on your notepad on a piece of paper write sentences
- 798 and give explanation why you use
- 799 why you put them in that category
- 800 We've got the example of a passport
- 801 so I think (.) maybe the visa!
- 802 maybe you should write for example in the first category you should write about the visa
- 803 you must have a visa
- 804 you've got to have a visa
- 805 and then give me the reason, why you use the strongest and so on
- 806 I think one more we can add to the first category but you can write two I think for the other categories
- 807 Do you understand?
- 808 Do you understand what I mean?
- SS:
809 yeah
- T:
810 do it (pair work)
- T:
811 remember please
- 812 I want the sentence and the example and then an explanation to
- 813 Why you expressed it in that way (pair work)
- T:
814 you should have just about finished that I hope by now
- 815 Get to the last couple of tasks
- 816 they can be quite simple
- 817 I think the examples
- 818 Can I hear one or two?
- 819 Before time goes on
- 820 T! what did you write for must?
- S:
821 you must have a passport because you have to show it at the immigration
- T:
822 good sentence K!
- S:
823 you must take a: tourist visa
- 824 must take a visa actually
- T:
825 and the reason or explanation!
- S:
826 yeah because you must show it to the immigration personnel
- T:
827 ok and the grammatical explanation of using must! Yeah?
- S:
828 we use must to show the something is required by law
- T:
829 right so an official or may say an external obligation on you often by law
- 830 Ok! let's go on to the second group
- 831 T! have you got an example of something you must not or cannot!
- S:
832 you must not bring fresh fruit into the UK because it is prohibited by law
- T:
833 because it is prohibited by law,
834 or because of prohibition or because it is a sentence
- 835 because of followed by a noun
- 836 Ok, law again yeah the strongest-another negative
- 837 err E have you got a negative here?
- S:
838 you must not bring pirated copies to the UK because
- T:

839
[good
S:
840 because it is not allowed by the law
T:
841 very good because it is not allowed
by the law yes
842 And you must not
843 Has anyone used you cannot in the
same situation
844 G! have you got you cannot?
845 Just for practice
S:
846 you cannot bring fresh fruit into the
UK because it is forbidden by the
law
T:
847 right fine
848 Fine, Ok, so this is the negative
obligation
849 if you like prohibition strongest kind
850 Fine, Now what about something
you can do!
851 K! have you something you can do?
S:
852 [+ + +]
T:
853 you can yes
S:
854 it's permitted
T:
855 it's permitted isn't it?
856 go on excuse me
S:
857 [you can bring it if
you want to
T:
858 you could bring it if you want to yes
good
859 The use of can
860 any other from the can category
861 L! have you got one?
S:
862 you can bring an umbrella
T:
863 you can bring an umbrella huh
864 it permitted by law yes
865 Huh it is obligatory if you live here
866 every British citizen huh
867 ok, yeah you can bring an umbrella
868 Right how about the shoulds
869 H! have you got a should for us?
S:
870 you should bring a map of UK
T:

871 you should bring a map of the UK
872 Explain please!
S:
873 because it is good for your travel
T:
874 it is good to your: for travel For
travel
875 it is good for travelling
876 it is good to find your way around
877 to find your way around would be a
nice expression for that
878 Yeah, yes, Not necessary but a good
idea helpful
879 Another should please, M!
S:
880 you should bring an umbrella in case
it rains
T:
881 huh you should bring umbrella *in
case* it rains
882 Good a very nice expression
883 in case it rains good
884 Good idea
885 S! should
S:
886 more or less the same
T:
887 all right
888 Any!
889 A! different should?
S:
890 no
T:
891 no different shoulds ok
892 ok, things you don't have to
893 absence of obligation F!
S:
894 you do not have to bring a laptop
computer because it is very heavy to
carry on
T:
895 very good yeah
896 You don't have to
897 Something else K?
S:
898 you don't have to take a tennis racket
T:
899 huh
S:
900 huh because if you don't want to
play tennis
T:
901 it's true you don't have to
902 Huh E!
S:

903 you don't have to bring the insurance document because it is not required

T:
904 very good it is not required by law
905 good you don't have to
906 B! have you got don't have to?

S:
907 you don't have to bring the photographs of your hometown because you don't need it

T:
908 it's a good idea but you don't need it
909 yeah good yes good yes similar to don't need isn't it?
910 You don't need to you don't have to
911 Right, That's pretty good
912 did you have any problems with your examples?
913 No nothing
914 you need to check on that?
915 All right let's go on just in the last [+ +] something else
916 Do any of you drive already?
917 Are you licensed to drive a car?

SS:
918 /yes//yes/

T:
919 in your home country ok
920 do you know how you-
921 what you need in the UK
922 does any one know what you need in the UK to drive a car?
923 Obviously you need a license
924 You have to have a car

SS:
925 huh

T:
926 express it please practice the structure

S:
927 insurance

T:
928 no no practice the structure
929 do you have to have a car to drive?

S:
930 you have to,

T:
931 [you have to own the car

SS:
932 huh

T:
933 express it please

S:
934 you don't have to own a car

T:
935 [a car
to drive
936 yes because you could hire one
borrow one yes
937 Steal one

SS:
938 huh

T:
939 I didn't say that

SS:
940 huh

T:
941 [+ + +] oh right,
942 so to get a license what do you think you need?
943 what would you guess you might need in the UK?

S:
944 perhaps skill to control the car

T:
945 you must have the skill
946 Is that a legal obligation?

S:
947 yes you must learn how to control the car
948 how to drive it

T:
949 ok so how do you learn?
950 How do you learn?
951 you just go in the car and drive?

S:
952 no, by directions from the err expector

T:
953 ok you must learn by direction from the!

S1:
954 [experts

T:
955 yeah the experts ok
956 you must learn lessons from experts yeah
957 in!

S:
958 a driving school!

T:
959 in a driving school very good yeah
960 that's how we say in a driving school
961 so official yeah official

S:
962 [you must
practice

T:

963
[you must take lessons
S:
964 you must take the exam
T:
965 hold on K
966 you must- what kind of exam?
S:
967 driving exam
T:
968 I think you must know actually
969 I think you have to take an exam
970 I need you to know
971 when I passed you didn't have to but
I think you have to take an exam now
strange
972 Anyway, What else do you think you
need or you must to do
S:
973 you must know the law of the
transportation
T:
974 ah actually you must but that's part
of-
975 how do they know when you have
the skill?
S:
976 take exam!
T:
977 you take the test
978 Yeah, So this is a written exam ok!
979 and you must take that test
980 It's called the test driving exam isn't
it?
981 In fact you must pass the test not just
take it huh
982 it's very easy to take
SS:
983 huh
T:
984 huh it's not so easy to pass
985 so you must take the test when you
actually drive
986 and the examiner sits next to you and
does this (miming) and so no
SS:
987 huh
T:
988 yeah tells you what to do ok!
989 these are- I would say these are the
things you must do
990 I think that's about right
991 Ah what about age?
992 Do you know?
993 In the UK, What about the UK ?

994 then I'll ask you about your own
countries
995 Is there an age requirement?
996 You must be?
997 You must be?
S:
998 16
T:
999 I think it's 17 and that's strange
S:
1000 to drive a car or!
T:
1001 to drive a car yeah
1002 Strange age here we have many
strange [+ + +]
1003 How old do you have to be in
Spain?
S:
1004 18
T:
1005 18
S:
1006 to drive a car
1007 you can drive bikes
T:
1008 oh yes sure
1009 and you drive a certain size of
motorbike!
S:
1010 yeah
T:
1011 16!
S:
1012 yeah
T:
1013 and you can drive a bigger one
when you get older yeah
1014 and it goes up in size but the car I
think you have to be 17
S:
1015 [+ + +]
T:
1016 in America, some states of America
it's 14 or 12
1017 you know in the country in the big
country states you get little [+ + +]
driving farm trucks
1018 we've seen them in television
anyway
1019 Ok, err things you must do in the
UK
1020 if you want to drive on the roads,
you must have the skill
1021 but how do you do that

1022 you must learn from experts in the driving schools
 1023 so you must take official lessons
 1024 You must take a written exam,
 1025 and you must take a practical
 1026 you could take practical test [+ + +]
 1027 and you must be a certain age
 1028 Ah and I think you must also be younger than a certain age
 1029 Is it 80?
 1030 I think if you don't like I'm not sure the exact age
 1031 so I'll put under a certain age
 1032 Under a certain age [+ + +]
 S:
 1033 there are not limit
 T:
 1034 I think it's 80 or 85
 1035 it's quite old
 SS:
 1036 hum
 T:
 1037 yeah and after a certain age
 1038 well I think age is quite old
 SS:
 1039 yeah huh
 T:
 1040 I [+ + +] do
 S:
 1041 you could drive!
 T:
 1042 oh I'm not it's not my personal opinion K
 1043 I'm just give you what the official position is
 1044 Err I think you have to take a re-test every couple of years when you after a certain age
 1045 after 75 or something you have to be tested regularly
 1046 Obviously because people's mental faculties physical faculties deteriorates yes?
 1047 is that true?
 SS:
 1048 yeah
 T:
 1049 ok I think these are all the obligations aren't they!
 1050 The obligations
 1051 oh you must pay!
 SS:
 1052 huh
 T:
 1053 you must pay for the test

1054 Well it's true
 1055 you have to pay,
 1056 you know no pay no play
 SS:
 1057 huh
 T:
 1058 and you must swear a lot to drive a car
 S:
 1059 swear!
 T:
 1060 you must swear a lot
 1061 What a bloody hell do you think you're doing
 SS:
 1062 huh
 T:
 1063 no! yes
 SS:
 1064 huh
 T:
 1065 have you got no brain yeah?
 1066 No? [+ + +] this is the requirements
 1067 everybody grows horns when they say [+ + +]
 1068 they are different behind the car
 1069 behind the wheel of the car it's true no?
 SS:
 1070 yeah
 T:
 1071 I think it's very true
 1072 all these are necessary
 1073 Now err I think we've covered everything
 1074 we also have to- oh by the way in the test you have to have you eye sight tested
 1075 you must have certain kind of eyesight yeah?
 S:
 1076 you must be able to identify the car
 T:
 1077 yeah the car in front of you
 1078 the registration at a certain distance I think
 1079 ok! now how does that compare with your country?
 1080 What do you need to get your license in your countries?
 1081 What in Taiwan?
 1082 Do you have a license?
 1083 excuse me do you have a license?
 S:
 1084 yes

T: 1085 what you have to do?
S: 1086 it's almost the same as the UK
1087 but before we take the test we have to have a health examination
T: 1088 ah!
S: 1089 eye test something like that
T: 1090 [because the eye test is just done by the driving instructor by the driving examiner in the UK
S: 1091 they have to examine your physical:
T: 1092 [fitness
S: 1093 yeah
T: 1094 what?
1095 Heart and everything?
S: 1096 yeah
T: 1097 interesting ok
1098 and then you get the certificate?
S: 1099 um
T: 1100 ok so you must have the certificate when you go to the:
S: 1101 [yeah
S: 1102 to prove that
T: 1103 ok, but otherwise IS: the age the same?
1104 What age do you have to be?
S: 1105 18
T: 1106 eighteen!
1107 You must be 18 in Thailand to drive and can you drive up to: any age!
1108 Or is there any top limit?
S: 1109 I don't know

T: 1110 don't know ok
1111 you are not [+ + +]
SS: 1112 huh
T: 1113 ok, what about Japan?
1114 Do you drive T?
S: 1115 yes I drive
1116 we have the [+ + +] over the 18 to drive a car in Japan
T: 1117 right
S: 1118 yeah
1119 The other things I think are the same as UK
T: 1120 can you drive!
1121 Can you practice with someone
S: 1122 [ah no!
T: 1123 like your father or your brother or your sister
S: 1124 [no we can't
T: 1125 because we can do that with a provisional licence
1126 to get a provisional license when you want to start learning, you put plates, learners' plates on the car
S: 1127 [+ + +]
T: 1128 we say learner yeah!
S: 1129 [+ + +]
T: 1130 yeah [+ + +] we call them L plate
1131 because it is learner yeah
1132 and then someone with a licence can go with you,
1133 but you must have someone with a license
1134 and you can practice
1135 I think most of law has changed
1136 I think you can do that
1137 Because most people find they need a lot of practice Yeah
S:

1138 in Spain you must have the L in
your car when you pass the exam

T:
1139 not E?

S:
1140 no L yeah

T:
1141 L?

S:
1142 yeah when you pass the exam

T:
1143 [what it stands for?

S:
1144 during one year

T:
1145 what does it stand for in Spanish?

S:
1146 is just to to advertise the others that
you have passed the exam recently,

T:
1147
[um right

S:
1148 and you have in a

T:
1149 [it's P in some countries yeah

S:
1150 P?

T:
1151 yeah, I don't know yeah L yeah
1152 but I think now yes it may be an
obligation to have a sign when you
have just passed

SS:
1153 um

T:
1154 which might be P as well for
probational
1155 but I'm not sure
1156 may be not actually
1157 so it's a versatile is involved in this
1158 so in Japan you have to be 18?

S:
1159 [yeah

T:
1160 you must- do you take a physical
exam?

S:
1161 only eyesight test

T:
1162 by the ex- the driving examiner?

S:
1163 um:

T:
1164 or an official one?

S:
1165 actual

T:
1166 with an optician or
ophthalmologist?

S:
1167 not by optician but in the actual test

T:
1168 right yes this similar to UK
1169 I think yes
1170 M! do you drive?

S:
1171 [+ + +]

T:
1172 what- do you mean- can you say [+
+ +] you must have?

S:
1173 you must take psychological test

T:
1174 yeah! A psychological test!

S:
1175 yeah

T:
1176 you must!
1177 Well what does that do?
1178 like IQ test,

T:
1179 [right what what-

SS:
1180 huh

T:
1181 do you know what the idea is of
that?
1182 what the reason is for that?

S:
1183 I don't know
1184 Some people sometimes err not
suitable driving,

T:
1185
[oh I know
1186 The roads are full of people not
suitable for driving but there they
are, Huh

SS:
1187 huh

T:
1188 but

S:
1189 [some sort of people they can't
drive

T:
1190 what sort of people?

S:

1191 for some people they can't enter the school for driving
T: 1192 well based on this psychological test?
S: 1193 yes
T: 1194 um um fine I didn't know that
1195 it's interesting
1196 Otherwise things are what T is saying is much the same
S: 1197 yes
T: 1198 yeah ok, what about in China then
1199 What's the- what must you have or must you do?
S: 1200 we don't need to take the psychology test
T: 1201 you don't need the psychological test
1202 What must you have really?
S: 1203 [+ + +]
T: 1204 you don't remember taking that so ok
S: 1205 you must have been 18
T: 1206 you must be 18
S: 1207 you must be 18 and you enter the driving school to learn how to drive
1208 but you must pass the exam or the testing
1209 for practice you must know the law or the information of them
T: 1210 ah the rules of the road!
S: 1211 yes the roads
T: 1212 [traffic laws
S: 1213 yes
T: 1214 the rules of the road
S: 1215 [+ + +]
T:

1216 we have the so-called highway code which is not exactly laws
1217 but it's sort of recommended way
S: 1218 that's recommendation
T: 1219 recommended way to drive
1220 I think it is law actually
1221 I think the police can stop you if you violate (.) the high-
1222 now these are the obligations which you must do to get a licence
1223 what about what you think you should- what should you do to be a good driver?
1224 what would you say if you advise someone how to drive?
1225 what should you- who drives?
1226 Who drives?
1227 Ok, but you can still have opinions I think about this
1228 What do you think you should [+ + +] or should you do to be a good driver?
S: 1229 you should be very quiet when driving
T: 1230 quiet!
S: 1231 yeah
T: 1232 you can use a Spanish type
S: 1233 calm
T: 1234 very calm that's
S: 1235 [yeah very calm
T: 1236 you should be calm yes,
1237 not so easy to do always
S: 1238 yeah
T: 1239 can you give a reason?
S: 1240 because you can control you can control yourself err
T: 1241 [huh
S: 1242 driving you can control yourself in any situation

T: 1243 this is true
S: 1244 yeah
S: 1245 you should not keep the high fast at any time
T: 1246 you shouldn't be too fast
1247 Any time!
S1: highway
S: 1248 in highway you [+ + +]
1249 but in most situations specially in the downtown they don't keep the high
T: 1250
[you shouldn't
S: 1251 shouldn't you shouldn't keep the high:
T: 1252
[you shouldn't drive too fast
S: 1253 too fast drive too fast
T: 1254 too fast
S: 1255 yes
S: 1256 flash your (.) front light
T: 1257 you shouldn't flash out the car
1258 because!
S: 1259 it cause accidents
T: 1260 [it could
1261 I think we can't say [+ + +]
S: 1262 could
T: 1263 [cause an accident
S: 1264 [cause an accident
T: 1265 it's aggressive
S: 1266 yes
T: 1267 so you shouldn't be aggressive
1268 K! do you drive?

S: 1269 yes
T: 1270 what should a good driver do do you think?
S: 1271 [+ + +]
T: 1272 huh sure but can you think of other things which you think someone should,
S: 1273
[I have to be careful
T: 1274 you have to be careful
S: 1275 yes
T: 1276 how how are you careful?
1277 What is to be careful?
S: 1278 um:
1279 you have to be careful or other cars [+ + +]
T: 1280 so you have to be aware of them maybe you know
1281 You should look around you
S: 1282 um
T: 1283 use your mirrors
S: 1284 it help
T: 1285 it helps
1286 not just for!
SS: 1287 huh
T: 1288 how many times yeah!
SS: 1289 huh
T: 1290 particularly one sex
SS: 1291 huh
T: 1292 but I won't say which one
SS: 1293 huh
T: 1294 politically dangerous
SS:

1295 yeah
T: 1296 huh but then men shouldn't be doing
SS: 1297 huh oh
T: 1298 is that right?
SS: 1299 yeah
T: 1300 huh what else?
S: 1301 I think you should concentrate on the driving
T: 1302 yeah concentrate
S: 1303 yeah
T: 1304 and not!
S: 1305 not dis: distracts you not [+ + +] distraction
T: 1306 not be distracted
S: 1307 yes
T: 1308 yeah good good not be easily distracted yes that's good
S: 1309 and you should help other car
T: 1310
[yeah
S: 1311 when they have problems because it's not,
T: 1312 [good point
S: 1313 very common
T: 1314 yeah I think you should
1315 that's good if you can isn't it?
1316 Help other cars
1317 I think you should be polite if you can
1318 In your letting people out
SS: 1319 yes
T: 1320 I don't know what they're like
1321 what the habits are like,

1322 where you come from
1323 It varies in Britain
1324 Go to London and people sh:: (sound effect)
SS: 1325 huh
T: 1326 when you are used to driving in the north you go down there and suddenly you know not always can be- go to another people in Yorkshire people are pretty:
1327 Leeds can be a little bit like all big cities I think
S: 1328 yeah
T: 1329 in [+ + +] they are very polite almost very polite almost too polite everybody stops
SS: 1330 huh
S: 1331 in the small towns actually
T: 1332 [and very slow sometimes
S: 1333 yes
SS: 1334 huh
T: 1335 I live in Scarborough which is on the coast
1336 has a lot of retired people and [+ + +] the cap and gloves for driving
SS: 1337 huh
T: 1338 they've got a beautiful car because they're retired
1339 they've got lots of savings
1340 so they've got beautiful cars (miming the way they drive)
SS: 1341 huh
T: 1342 28 miles an hour
SS: 1343 huh
T: 1344 and you are behind and horn
1345 get out of the way (sound effect)
SS: 1346 huh
T:

1347 right well we must stop [+ + +]
 S:
 1348 the most important thing
 T:
 1349 [oh sorry
 S:
 1350 you shouldn't drive and you drink
 too much
 T:
 1351 very good point actually
 SS:
 1352 huh
 T:
 1353 well one thing is illegal
 1354 yeah you must not drive with- in
 Britain
 1355 can you drink anything in China
 and drive or is there a certain limit?
 S:
 1356 limit
 T:
 1357 because of the limit in Britain
 1358 but in some countries have no
 alcohol
 1359 in Sweden for example you mustn't
 have any alcohol by law
 1360 but in Britain there is a limit
 1361 And which- over which you must
 not go good point
 1362 What do you feel about it?
 S:
 1363 of course I I not buy a car because
 T:
 1364
 [because you like drinking!
 S:
 1365 yeah
 SS:
 1366 huh
 S:
 1367 [+ + +]
 T:
 1368 all right yes I wouldn't like to get
 into a car with someone who has
 drunk too much
 1369 But what do you feel about whether
 people should or shouldn't drink
 when they drive?
 S:
 1370 actually I think [+ + +]
 T:
 1371 do you think they should?
 S:
 1372 yes shouldn't
 T:

1373 none
 S:
 1374 [none
 T:
 1375 or a little
 S:
 1376 none
 T:
 1377 even a small beer
 S:
 1378 no no
 T:
 1379 [you really don't like it at all
 you think they shouldn't
 1380 any other opinion?
 1381 T! do you drive and drink a little
 sometimes?
 S:
 1382 no never
 T:
 1383 never!
 S:
 1384 yeah
 T:
 1385 because you feel it's
 wrong not a good idea?
 S:
 1386 yes
 T:
 1387 M!
 S:
 1388 [+ + +]
 T:
 1389 we must stop because you have a
 break and then-
 1390 thank you
 1391 ok I will see you during the
 programme

T4 (3rd Session)

- S: 1 what's this?
- T: 2 what's THAT?
3 if you kindly distribute, I would let you know in second
- SS: 4 /quiz/
- T: 5 yes another quiz,
- SS: 6 /oh/
- T: 7 huh huh huh, but this one is a very PLEASANT one, (papers distributed among students)
8 all right, this is a task you're doing tonight,
9 something different
10 but before doing the task, let me ask you some questions
11 ah how many of you guys have friends abroad
12 friends and or relatives leaving abroad?
- S: 13 relatives
- T: 14 relatives or friends
15 yeah(.) S and H, now, a::re they H iS: he or she a relative or a friend?
- S: 16 my family
- T: 17 your fam- what do you mean by my family?
- S: 18 mother brother and- [+ + +]
- T: 19 oh! yeah, yeah,
- S: 20 [+ + +]
- T: 21 no, no, they are your family
22 your mother and your brother iS:: err you: you: refer to them as your family members
- S: 23 so your mother and your brother live in America =
- S: 24 [and my sisters
- T: 25 = and your sister,
26 your sister live in America, right?
27 where?
- S: 28 what?
- T: 29 where in America?
- S: 30 my sister lives in Canada and my mother and brother and other sister =
- T: 31 [the other sister
- S: 32 = yeah she is in Sweden
- T: 33 oh, in Sweden
34 so you- why: the the some of them are in Canada, some are in Sweden,
35 but you said America I got the picture you talked about the United States
- S: 36 I didn't say-
- T: 37 I'm sorry there are- my mistake, all right,
38 you have relatives and family abroad?
- S: 39 yeah
- T: 40 where?
- S: 41 in Europe and United States
- T: 42 these are relatives and family and friends,
43 of course you were in television business you know- you know lots of people
44 interesting (.) who else?

S: 45 families and friends?
 46 You have family and friends
 T: 47 yes
 S: 48 who?
 T: 49 my uncle
 S: 50 where?
 T: 51 in [sweden]
 S: 52 in [Swe:den]
 53 [Swe:den] okay
 54 only one uncle right?
 55 does he have family over there?
 T: 56 yes
 S: 57 is he married
 T: 58 yes he's married
 S: 59 okay, S?
 T: 60 in the united States, my uncles and in Germany my aunt
 S: 61 your aunt is in Germany, your uncle is in the States
 T: 62 [in France and Spain Sweden and [+ + +]
 S: 63 okay(.) do you have any friends err err or relatives?
 T: 64 [+ + +]
 S: 65 all right, and you raised your hands too,
 66 friends or relatives?
 T: 67 my relatives
 S: 68 who are they?
 T: 69 my uncle in the united States and my aunts in the United United States too, and Canada and Switzerland, Sweden
 S: 70 ah- all over the world huh
 T: 71 huh
 S: 72 and:
 T: 73 and Australia
 S: 74 I forgot to ask you,
 75 have any friends?
 T: 76 no
 S: 77 [+ + +]
 T: 78 in the Canada or Canada?
 S: 79 Canada
 T: 80 in Canada
 81 one in Germany one in Canada
 82 any friends?
 S: 83 no
 T: 84 no, you- you disappoint me
 85 what do you guys do with your [+ + +]?
 86 these guys- everybody th:ese days- everybody sitting at the computer, CHATTING with- chat with
 S: 87 [+ + +]
 T: 88 ha?
 S: 89 I've found one in computer
 T: 90 have you WON or found
 S: 91 I've found
 T: 92 oh! you've found a friend
 93 how- very interesting
 94 where?

S: 95 she: lives in the Arabian
96 and she wanted [+ + +] I liked
how old she was

SS: 97 huh huh

S: 98 how [+ + +] it was interesting
for me
99 but she said if you want to
chat with me you must to be =

T: 100
[you must be

S: 101 = more than thirteen and I
don't know how he can
understand
102 how he can err

S: 103 [he or she
continued

T: 104 did you not continue?

S: 105 just- I: err what say my family
and my name and my [+ + +]
106 and I said I am thirteen but I
can't continued

T: 107 thirty or thirteen?

S: 108 thirteen

T: 109 one three?

S: 110 no thirty

T: 111 three zero, so thirty

S: 112 thirty

T: 113 she said you must be older
thirty to talk to her
114 and [+ + +] what happened?

SS: 115 [+ + +]

S: 116 [+ + +]

T: 117 oh! yeah, some friends on-
very interesting huh huh

S: 118 of course I didn't [+ + +] very
good
119 err she was- was ill in what
say?

T: 120 she has- she has psychological
problems
121 the way you put it- said I
found a friend I said GOOD
WHEN HE OR SHE
COMING TO IRAN

SS: 122 [+ + +]

S: 123 he is in our company for
working
124 she err err we must- we have a
letter what to say?
125 we send the letter

T: 126 [correspond
127 yeah, of course [+ + +]

S: 128 yes, and sometimes err they
come to Iran and

T: 129 so, you have friends coming
you think from another
country coming into Iran, in
Germany
130 that's nice very good
131 any other having friends?

S: 132 [+ + +]

T: 133 friends

S: 134 friends and relatives

T: 135 okay?
136 Where?

S: 137 in England, my sister lives in
England and I have a friend in
Poland

T: 138 in Poland?

S:

T: 139 yes
 S: 140 a friend?
 T: 141 yes
 S: 142 how long have you known him or her?
 T: 143 err I know him err
 S: 144 I've known him
 T: 145 I've- I have known him from when we go to err school
 S: 146 since we went to school
 T: 147 yes since we went to school
 S: 148 [I've known him since we went to school
 T: 149 and he's in Poland
 S: 150 is he Polish?
 T: 151 no, he is Iranian
 S: 152 oh (.) okay, a friend who lives- he is not from Poland
 T: 153 yes
 S: 154 and I usually have a chat with my computer on weekends
 T: 155 some person
 S: 156 you make chat ON your computer
 T: 157 they are Iranian but they live in other countries of the world like Australia, London
 S: 158 err most of them are living America
 T: 159 IN America
 S: 160 yes, they speak about something like our problems in Iran
 T: 161 they like this matter very- a lot of
 S: 162 [+ + +] not the matter
 T: 163 CAREFUL with the usage of this word matter
 S: 164 THEY are [+ + +] yes
 T: 165 I have a friend in Cyprus
 S: 166 in Cyprus (.) nice
 T: 167 she comes from Russia and she has a little bar
 S: 168 every morning and afternoon I went there
 T: 169 you go to Cyprus every morning and?
 S: 170 err at the- in past
 T: 171 you?
 S: 172 yes
 T: 173 you used to go there in the morning?
 S: 174 Oh you met her in Cyprus?
 T: 175 yes
 S: 176 Oh, you VISITED CYPRUS and you
 T: 177 yes every morning and afternoon
 S: 178 every morning and afternoon you used to go to bar
 T: 179 nice, what does she do there?
 S: 180 she has her own bars
 T: 181 she has her own BAR! VERY GOOD! VOW! very interesting
 SS: 182 /Cyprus/
 T:

183 Cyprus
 184[+ + +] and sorry you [+ + +]
 people, friends in where?
 185 where do you have friends
 from?
 S:
 186 Germany
 T:
 187 in Germany?
 S:
 188 yes
 T:
 189 are they German?
 S:
 190 no, he's French
 T:
 191 he's French, lives in Germany
 S:
 192 yes, work in Germany
 T:
 193 works in Germany
 194 of course he works and lives in
 Germany
 S:
 195 yes
 T:
 196 err how long have you [+ + +]
 S:
 197 about one year
 T:
 198 all right, and here?
 S:
 199 I have a friend in Turkey
 T:
 200 In Turkey
 201 now let me ask you something
 202 how many of you guys have:
 have: actually err visited these
 friends abroad?
 203 or have been abroad for any
 reason
 S:
 204[+ + +]
 T:
 205 you have?
 206 and you have (.) right?
 S:
 207 visiting someone or?
 T:
 208 [just no no
 Germany

209 the err for own purposes
 210 either if you: having a friend
 or just travelling for fun for
 business for pleasure whatever
 211 you, you've travelled abroad
 right?
 212 anybody else?
 213 you have, you said that
 214 where else did trav- where else
 did you go? besides Cyprus?
 S:
 215 for visit?
 T:
 216 no where?
 S:
 217 err just Cyprus
 T:
 218 only Cyprus
 219 and when was it?
 S:
 220 [last summer
 T:
 221 last summer
 222 yes so, keep it in mind
 223 how many of you people?
 224 Do you?
 225 right?
 S:
 226 but I can't continue of course
 227 I have decided to send some
 letters but we can't continue
 T:
 228 no- no, the question was, have
 you ever travelled?
 229 have you travelled to any
 country?
 S:
 230 Japan, Italy, German
 T:
 231 to Turkey
 232 Turkey okay
 233 and Mr. S you: [+ + +]
 Germany when?
 S:
 234[+ + +]
 T:
 235 you remember on your trip
 quite good, err
 S:
 236 Germany too
 237 when I was fourteen years old

T: 238 [fourteen
239 would you remember the trip?

S: 240 yes, Netherlands

T: 241 Netherlands
242 okay when was that?

S: 243 1994

T: 244 1994
245 six years ago
246 did you like it? okay, and?

S: 247 [+ + +]

T: 248 Turkey

S: 249 once upon a time, when I was
a child I lived in London for
one year

T: 250 once upon a time
251 I [+ + +] in the story
252 you are that old that it sounds
like a story to you
253 once upon a time in- in
London right?
254 good(.) and you were four
years old?

S: 255 not four, but five, six

T: 256 do you remember anything
from the trip?

S: 257 n: for example something that
was interesting for me
258 I have seen in Iran that the
birds scare you
259 but there, for example because
of being child I was interested
in that

T: 260 aha!

S: 261 that the birds comes near that
err forget the name of the
clock

T: 262 the Big Ben!

S: 263 yes, and they came and they
sit on you

T: 264
[they come sit in your hand
and you_feed them =

S: 265 [yes- yes

T: 266 = birds don't scare you
267 birds are not SCARED of
people
268 yes you- that was strange to
you
269 in here in our country birds
run away
270 they are scared of people
271 there birds are not scared
272 all right, let me ask you the
question
273 when you go back to the day
of the trip can you- can you
make a little time travel
backwards?
274 err did you go alone or did you
go:: with: family and friends?
275 the trip you made

S: 276 [+ + +]

T: 277 the- the- you've travelled a lot
278 did you travel alone?
279 Or did you travel with friends
and family members?
280 S:
281 also with- with my family and
err my friends

T: 282
[both, both you: alone, family
members, friends, okay
283 let me ask you something
284 what is it- what is important to
have and to take with you
when you go on a trip abroad!
overseas?

SS: 285 [+ + +]

T:

S: 286 ah, set- get together make a list
 of the things that are important
 when you go abroad
 T: 287 the most important thing is
 money
 S: 288 thank you very much
 289 take it as the first clue
 290 don't forget to take money
 with you , right
 291 write down a list of the things
 that are- that YOU would take
 with you on a trip abroad
 okay? please!
 (pair work)
 SS: 292 okay, do you need more time
 to work out the list?
 S: 293 [+ + +]
 T: 294 about the gun in America
 295 every person can buy any
 guns?
 S: 296 aha! that- it takes- it takes me
 at least fifteen minutes to try
 to- to- describe the whole
 situation
 297 it's not as: sim- it's not a yes
 no answer
 298 so it dif- not aa: so far I can
 tell you it differs from state to
 state
 299 different states have different
 laws
 300 and then when it comes to the
 question whether you are a
 citizen or you aren't or you are
 a non-citizen, okay?
 301 If you are a resident or you are
 a visitor?
 S: 302 did you buy a gun?
 T: 303 I am a collector
 304 I have sixteen pieces in my
 collection
 305 I'm a gun collector myself
 S: 306 gun?
 T: 307 oh, yeah
 S: 308 really gun collector!
 T: 309 yeah
 SS: 310 huh huh huh
 T: 311 yeah, but not here
 312 aaa: hold on! hold on! not in
 Iran! No!
 S: 313 you didn't kill someone?
 T: 314 no sir, fortunately not huh
 SS: 315 huh huh huh
 T: 316 I did not kill anybody
 317 err I have not killed anybody
 S: 318 and animals?
 T: 319 I used to haunt
 320 I used to HAUNT but not
 anymore
 321 when I was younger
 S: 322 excuse me, what kind of guns
 are you interested in?
 T: 323 ah oh! you're making-
 making- making the question-
 you know- hold on to your
 question
 324 I'll answer it later
 325 let us get to this part first
 326 I'll answer your question later
 on
 327 err all right(.) let's view that
 list you made
 328 ah let's talk about the
 necessities first
 329 what are the most important
 things you take with you?
 330 F!
 S: 331 I think we a pass passport
 T: 332 we need a passport

S: 333 we need money

T: 334 money

S: 335 visa

T: 336 of course sometimes

S: 337 some information about

T: 338 [most of the times visas, yes?

S: 339 some information about peop-err people, weather and

T: 340 [information about the country or [+ + +]

341 you don't carry information with you

S: 342 [no

S: 343 map

T: 344 we need a map!

S: 345 yes, we must

T: 346 but what do you say then?

347 Can't we buy maps over there?

SS: 348 /yes/

T: 349 is it [+ + +] taking with you- can't you buy for example a map of the city of Los Angles here?

S: 350 no

T: 351 you can, so let's our ob- in the sense this is not- this is not

S: 352 [we want more information about that country before when we go there

T: 353 yeah, but because maps- I don't think- maps are not- it's better to go- to get maps

S: 354 booklets

T: 355 or booklets

356 tourist guides

S: 357 and I think we must have the address of Iran embassy in the-

T: 358 make sure you know the address to Iranian embassy Iranian embassy

S: 359 Iranian embassy

T: 360 fine, so more and more things you can take with you yes?

S: 361 I think we are- if they are ill they take the drugs they [+ + +]

T: 362 aha! if they- if they are on medication

S: 363 yes

T: 364 to be on medication(.) right?

365 if they are on medication

366 okay they take their- their medicine with them

367 the pills

S: 368 [and I think traveller's' check and they have to [+ + +]

T: 369 I missed the second, the last second, the last two items

370 ah what?

S: 371 travellers' check

T: 372 travellers' checks for money

S:

T: 373 they are err for example err of
 the- there are- they live in
 some country they [+ + +]
 T: 374 credit card
 375 if they have credit cards, good
 376 more items
 S: 377 camera
 T: 378 camera
 379 ha! don't forget cameras
 good(.) yes?
 S: 380 I think a dictionary bilin-
 T: 381 [a dictionary a bilingual
 dictionary is good
 382 yes they have translators these
 days
 383 I don't know how good they
 are
 S: 384 gifts
 T: 385 ha?
 S: 386 gifts
 T: 387 GIFTS
 388 for what?
 S: 389 for my friends
 T: 390 oh! for your friends
 391 souvenirs
 392 very good, souvenirs is a must
 SS: 393 [+ + +]
 S: 394 to book a room before travel
 T: 395 make hotel reservations before
 travelling
 396 we put the assumption err as if
 you have a friend there
 397 you have a friend or relative
 398 so, you don't have to worry
 about [+ + +]
 S: 399 an international driving license
 T: 400 international drivers' license
 401 good idea
 S: 402 what's it?
 403 a notebook you have, your
 own computer
 404 we take and change it
 T: 405 in a computer?
 S: 406 the own computer
 407 the little computer
 T: 408 oh! laptop computer
 409 so laptop computer, laptop
 S: 410 some software, CDs, some
 software, CD or software
 T: 411 CD and soft- for what?
 S: 412 they are very err expensive
 T: 413 you mean music?
 S: 414 no
 T: 415 ha?
 S: 416 programs
 T: 417 programs
 418 video- yeah, software of- err
 for a computer
 S: 419 yeah
 T: 420 you take it for your own use or
 a souvenir?
 421 as a gift?
 SS: 422 [+ + +]
 T: 423 both(.) may be not, but you
 can if you want to
 424 am I right?
 425 you can take some computer
 software, but then I think you
 have to take it to the Ershsad
 (Ministry of Culture and

Islamic Guidance) before they-
they- they inspect and label it
for you

SS: 426/it is not necessary/
T: 427 now, it's not necessary
S: 428 if they don't see it
T: 429 but if they find out?
S: 430 yes, they should check it
T: 431 so that's a big problem
S: 432 every cassettes and video
cassette tape cassettes CDs
must-
T: 433 must be inspected
S: 434 travelling ticket
435 a return ticket
T: 436 oh! yes(.) don't forget your
tickets
437 please make sure you have
your tickets(.) very good
S: 438 some necessary medicine
T: 439 oh yes(.) that's what V said
440 if you if you are on medication
make-
S: 441
[+ + +]
T: 442 oh just in case
S: 443 yes
T: 444 yeah, take some necessary
medicine just in case
S: 445 [+ + +]
T: 446 like what?

447 that reminds me of my- my
sister when she first travelled
to the States
448 she had a suitcase, this big
(shows the size)
449 filled with medicine
450 and when- I said he- she just
passed through the customs
451 they didn't test the suitcase
452 I said my God! had they- had
they opened the suitcase they
would have never let you into
the country

SS: 453 huh huh huh
T: 454 how about the drug dealers
455 old lady, 65, 70 years old at
the time
456 anyway, let's go to our task
457 imagine a friend of yours is
coming to visit you in Iran
458 let's read all the instructions
S: 459 do you go by bus?
T: 460 me?
461 no never(.) unfortunately-
S: 462 [+ + +] border for travel by
bus
T: 463 I think the only border we
have is Bazargan
S: 464 Bazargan
T: 465 no never
S: 466 most of people carry err a tin
of cheese with lavash (a kind
of Iranian bread) and rice and
T: 467 oh! yes, don't forget lavash
and cheese
468 that's a must
SS: 469 huh huh huh
T:

S: 470 if you're travelling abroad
 don't forget lavash and
 cheese!
 T: 471 barbari! (a kind of Iranian
 bread)
 SS: 472 barbari too!
 T: 473 huh huh huh
 T: 474 to make sandwiches right?
 475 all right, let us let go over our
 very task
 476 step one let's read
 477 F?
 (recites the instructions)
 T: 478 did you get it so far?
 479 somebody, paraphrase
 480 tell you what it is
 481 tell you the story
 482 you guys were [+ + +]
 483 obviously don't you- you
 didn't get this so listen please
 SS: 484 huh huh huh
 T: 485 somebody paraphrasing
 S: 486 somebody is coming to visit us
 or coming to our country
 T: 487
 [a friend of ours
 S: 488 that is-
 T: 489 one of our friends from UK is
 coming to Iran
 S: 490 that he hasn't get place and
 room to put his err equipment
 there so that-
 T: 491
 [in a backpack, not [+ + +] on
 a suitcase
 492 a backpack you know what a
 backpack is?
 S: 493 yes
 S: 494 so that there is some- there is a
 list of equipment that he's
 thinking about them which is
 more important
 T: 495
 [he must bring these things
 with him
 496 hate these things with him
 actually
 497 hate them
 498 now let us go to the bo- these
 are the things- let's go to the
 box and make sure you
 understand all of them
 499 read- read the items
 500 if you have questions ask me
 S: 501 [hi:king] boots
 T: 502 [heiking] boots
 S: 503 [heiking] boots
 T: 504 [heiking] when you go hiking
 like this
 505 hiking boots
 S: 506 mountain [+ + +]
 T: 507 for mountain climbing
 508 not these- these are not for
 mountain climbing
 509 but good for going to the
 mountains
 510 mountain climbing is err one
 take more like a professional
 item
 (reviewing the box)
 T: 511 did you go through the list?
 512 or you still =
 SS: 513 [yes
 T: 514 = yeah very good
 515 any questions?
 S: 516 what are surfboards?

T: 517 surfboard
518 what is a surfboard?

SS: 519/ you will bring surf board/

T: 520 in your book wind surfing was one of the (a student comes in)

T: 521 I think you were absent
522 wind surfing is a- is a board

S: 523 [yes I know

T: 524 why does he want to bring a surfboard to Iran?

S: 525 yes

T: 526 probably he is a surfer

S: 527 yes

T: 528 he must be a surfer(.) right?
529 and he thinks he can use it

S: 530 we haven't seen

T: 531 oh yeah if you go to the Caspian you see a lot

S: 532 I have seen

T: 533 we have [+ + +]

S: 534 being err(.) yes

T: 535 surf board is only a board
536 there is no sail
537 it's only a board and all you need is a tide
538 you need tides and a ride on top of the tide

S: 539 but in Iran

T: 540 in Iran we too
541 but it is not very common

S: 542 a sort of the Iran Kish

T: 543 island
544 in Kish, you know what the sport is!
545 not very popular in Iran
546 so maybe you can- you can consider that as

T: 547 are you sure about the laptop computer?
548 can it be[+ + +]

S: 549 [+ + +] in the passport

T: 550 ah yeah! yeah! same for the camcorder and the camera

S: 551 [yes- yes

T: 552 making sure they don't sell it here

S: 553 you can bring one

T: 554 for yourself?

S: 555 [+ + +]

T: 556 [+ + +]

S: 557 but they control the software

T: 558 they control
559 they CHECK it

S: 560 but they don't understand it

T: 561 [+ + +]

T: 562 can I have your attention for one second please?
563 those of you who have finished err and the ones who will be finishing soon
564 for every category add two more items
565 think of two more items
566 add to your categories
567 let say box one things he MUST bring to Iran

568 think of two items you think is necessary
569 vaccination hum?
570 vaccination example one
571 vaccination
S:
572 [+ + +]
T:
573 against certain diseases
574 one of the requirements is vaccination
575 you have to vaccinate err: yourself for [+ + +]
576 you have to get shots against diseases
577 usually this is common when you travel abroad
578 I think this is an example
579 things that you must-
580 add two more items which is not in that box, to every box okay?
581 add things he mustn't bring
582 you mustn't bring what? magazine-
SS:
583 /alcohol/
T:
584 alcohol
S:
585 a sexual magazine
T:
586 ha?
S:
587 a sexual magazine
T:
588 sexually explicit magazine
589 don't say sexual magazines
590 sexually explicit magazines (individual work continues)
T:
591 listen unfortunately we're running out of time
592 with that stage we cannot do anything about it right now
593 ah: bring the papers with you tomorrow all right?
594 and we will carry on
S:
595 what does explicit means?
T:
596 aha! sexually explicit means they show: sexual- it: has sexual contents
597 explicit, show it
S:
598 clearly
T:
599 yeah, magazines, books, films, videos, are prohibited in Iran
600 alcohol is- yes?
S:
601 sexual explicit?
T:
602 sexually explicit
S:
603 Salman Roshdi
T:
604 oh: forbidden books!
605 the Satanic Verses
606 forbidden books, yeah
S:
607 American forbidden books
T:
608 American forbidden books
609 what do you mean?
S:
610 [+ + +]
T:
611 in each box add two more items which are [+ + +] to the rules (individual work)
T:
612 let us see what we got
613 ah can we do [+ + +]
S:
614 yes
T:
615 in box one, it is necessary and obligatory
S:
616 passport
T:
617 yeah, let's talk about the two items you added
S:
618 money
T:
619 money is:: was money mentioned up there?
SS:

T: 620/no/
 621 no, money?
 622 Maybe haven't, no,
 623 money?
 624 Credit card is there?
 S: 625 [yes but cash
 T: 626 umbrella, hiking, cash
 S: 627 but in Iran
 T: 628 you are very right, absolutely
 right
 629 you need to bring in MONEY
 with you
 S: 630 some dollars
 T: 631 [dollars or
 pounds
 S: 632 exchange
 T: 633 no
 S: 634 [+ + +]
 T: 635 no! no! it's difficult for him to
 go and obtain rial
 636 do you recommend your friend
 to obtain rials in England and
 bring it to Iran?
 S: 637 [+ + +]
 T: 638 why not?
 S: 639 it is exchange
 640 what's the meaning of
 exchange?
 T: 641 exchange is change your
 money
 S: 642 I think they haven't rial in
 England
 T: 643 they do(.) they do have rials in
 England
 644 but listen(.) be realistic
 645 your friend is coming to Iran
 646 he is English
 647 do you recommend him to go
 and change his pounds into
 rial and bring it to Tehran?
 S: 648 no
 T: 649 no, what- you said the
 opposite
 650 said bring some dollars and
 pounds
 651 you can change here in Iran
 right?
 652 so, you're right, cash is one of
 the things
 653 he must =
 S: 654 [it is necessary
 T: 655 = very necessary
 S: 656 [+ + +]
 T: 657 I know(.) but this guy only is
 thinking of bringing credit
 cards
 658 am I right?
 S: 659 yes
 SS: 660 [+ + +]
 T: 661 I know, I know, but you it
 662 put yourself into err put
 yourself in- in- the err shoes
 663 he comes to Iran only with a
 credit card
 664 now you are the friend
 665 if he cannot spend his credit
 card, who has to pay?
 666 who has to pay?
 SS: 667 [+ + +]
 T: 668 you, now to protect yourself
 669 you say it's must, MUST
 BRING CASH
 670 maybe the government is-
 maybe it's not the law

671 the government is not forcing
him to bring cash but you just
to keep on the safe side
672 bring cash with you, good
673 cash is a good option
674 M?
675 What else?

S:
676 [+ + +] bank in Iran err have
got a unit that change the
credit card err to money

T:
677 I know, I know
678 for just to keep it on the safe
side
679 you would recommend your
friend to take some cash with
you
680 how can- will you do that if
this was for real?

S:
681 cash?

T:
682 you can say cash, money
683 cash is a good one
684 what else?
685 In box one?

S:
686 insurance documents

T:
687 insurance, like an insurance d::

S:
688 international insurance

T:
689 an in- having an inter- to
insure himself and bring some
insurance having no- you are:
being too pessimistic

S:
690 no

T:
691 I know what you have in mind
692 you're saying if he gets sick
I'm ending paying for this

SS:
693 huh

T:
694 if [+ + +] an accident and they
take him to hospital if he
doesn't get admissions I have
to pay for him

695 in that case yes
696 or- or is it man- is it
mandatory or [obligatory]?

S:
697 no sir(.) there is some
countries in the world like [+ +
+]

T:
698
[SOS

S:
699 yes, SOS
700 if he comes to our country and
err he has a problem about law
or about an accident or about
illness they have

T:
701 I know, that's up to question
702 the question, is this
mandatory?
703 Is this a must?
704 Or is it an option?

S:
705 if you want to go to abroad
you MUST be err

T:
706 if you want to go abroad you
must be insured
707 maybe, Iran has the same law
708 the immigration officer(.) they
might ask you for insurance
709 so probably you can take it as
a must, okay(.) thank you
good

S:
710 another, the address of their
embassy in Iran
711 he must err

T:
712 why?
713 don't you know where British
embassy is?

S:
714 yes, I know

T:
715 [in Ferdousi

S:
716 but may err we can't find it
717 may be they-

T:
718 oh no! it is not a must

719 more musts
720 I know the first item is very difficult

S:

721 some software
722 because maybe he is a computer worker

T:

723 oh, that's not a must
724 you are p- putting assumptions
725 maybe he- he wants to work on his computer
726 no, must's something very strong
727 that is a very difficult one yes?

S:

728 our address

T:

729 oh yes, oh yes
730 don't forget(.) don't forget to take-

S:

731
[our telephone number

T:

732 yeah, your address and your telephone number is a must
733 in case you cannot find him in the airport
734 in case he gets lost(.) at least he knows to sh- on a piece of paper showing the taxi driver take him to this address or make a phone-
735 good I take that
736 going to the second item, what did you gu- what did you guys add?
737 it is prohibited proHIbited by law in Iran
738 it's a

SS:

739 /guns/

T:

740 guns
741 not bring any guns ha?

S:

742 /alcoholic drinks/

T:

743 [alcoholic drinks

S:

744 computer sheets

T:

745 ha?
746 some computer sheets?

S:

747 some computer sheets

T:

748 some computer SHEETS?
749 what do you mean by computer sheets?

S:

750 chips

T:

751 chips?

S:

752 chips yes

T:

753 computer chips!
754 it's prohibited?

S:

755 yes

S:

756 animals

T:

757 animals
758 is prohibited?

SS:

759 /no/

T:

760 is that right?

SS:

761 /no/

S:

762 first they have to bring his card

S:

763
[ticket

T:

764 vaccination
765 but he CAN bring it
766 it is not a must, not
767 if he wants to he can, but he have to ha- he has to have certain papers yes,

S:

768 [+ + +]

T:

S: 769 ha?
 T: 770 drugs
 S: 771 ah(.) drugs
 T: 772 don't bring any drugs, no, no
 S: 773 tapes(.) cassettes(.) and video cassettes
 T: 774 tapes, cassettes, video cassettes(.)excellent
 S: 775 medicine
 T: 776 medicine is prohibited in Iran?
 SS: 777 /no /
 S: 778 some of them, like drugs
 S: 779 needs the Ministry of Health permit
 T: 780 permit
 S: 781 ministry of IRAN, from Iran
 T: 782 why medicines needs permission
 S: 783 this is personal
 T: 784 if- if I have a heart condition and I take- I take my medicine
 S: 785 medicine in that respect no
 T: 786 my mother had bring some medicines from Germany
 S: 787 that's right(.) nobody-
 T: 788 of course I think [+ + +]
 S: 789 but, I- I have some tablets in my suitcase
 T: 790 who cares?
 S: 791 I'm not importing it!
 T: 792 it's for my personal use
 S: 793 my grandmother
 T: 794 some of them bring err some tablets for [+ + +]

795 err but in the: last time he came- she came they saw that and they said err you bring err about eight and send the err box
 T: 796 ah! so it was more than one
 S: 797 no, this guy is only coming to Iran
 T: 798 yeah you're saying- maybe- maybe saying for your uses
 S: 799 all right it's not [+ + +]
 T: 800 heroin and::
 S: 801 drugs in general
 T: 802 drugs, drugs
 S: 803 as we said sexual:
 T: 804 [sexually explicit magazines, yes
 S: 805 first hand electrical goods
 T: 806 electrical goods
 S: 807 for example tape, TV, came-video camera, first hand
 T: 808 he has video camera
 S: 809 [not first hand first hand, for sales not for-
 T: 810 [oh! yeah, yeah, don't bring anything for- you must not
 S: 811 TV more 21 inches forbidden
 T: 812 getting very technical now
 S: 813 TVs more than 21-
 T: 814 do you think this guy is going to bring a television with him?
 S: 815 he's coming for a visit
 T: 816 for [a gift]
 S: 817 for whom?

T: 818 as a souvenir
 SS: 819 as a souvenir
 T: 820 huh
 S: 821 some friends
 T: 822 he has only a backpack
 S: 823 he has only a backpack
 T: 824 don't forget, fine
 S: 825 that's enough
 T: 826 let's go to the next item
 S: 827 let us go to the next item
 T: 828 it is a good idea to bring this
 S: 829 camera
 T: 830 camera
 S: 831 watch
 T: 832 oh yes
 S: 833 laptop
 T: 834 laptop!
 S: 835 we have laptop here
 T: 836 no it's a good idea
 S: 837 you should
 T: 838 [+ + +]
 S: 839 what- what- how can we say
 T: this laptop computer?
 S: 840 Why I- camera- I understand
 T: because Iran- the reason is you
 S: should bring cameras because
 T: there are so many beautiful
 S: scenes
 T: 841 you can take pictures
 S: 842 [price of laptop here is more
 T: than other countries
 S: 843 what?
 T: 844 the price of-

SS: 845 /price of it/
 T: 846 I know! no
 S: 847 why are you say- why are you
 T: [+ + +] the friend must bring
 S: laptop computer to Iran?
 T: 848 as a gift
 S: 849 what would that do?
 T: 850 because of the software
 S: 851 as a gift?
 T: 852 as a gift for you?
 SS: 853 [+ + +]
 S: 854 Persian-English dictionary like
 T: this electrical-
 S: 855 bring a Persian(.) yeah, like a
 T: translat- good, yes
 S: 856 this is a good [+ + +] yes
 T: 857 nice to have a: dictionary of
 S: any type, good
 T: 858 that's a good one
 S: 859 there are software
 T: 860 they make software about the
 S: maps of all of the world and
 T: can be [+ + +]
 S: 861 software about maps!
 T: 862 about maps or:
 S: 863 do you really recommend your
 T: friend bring software maps to
 S: Iran?
 T: 864 [+ + +]
 S: 865 how he was- he's going to be
 T: with you
 S: 866 you're his friend
 T: 867 you wouldn't leave him alone?
 S: would you?

T: 868 some credit card or cash
 S: 869 he has credit- credit card- maybe credit card was best
 S: 870 [ID card
 S: 871 International license
 T: 872 an international lic- yeah!
 873 an international drivers' license
 874 it's a good suggestion, yes?
 S: 875 the friend or relative's address
 T: 876 friend, relative's address
 S: 877 don't forget to bring your [bri:d](.) moustache
 T: 878 beard and moustache what?
 SS: 879 huh huh huh
 T: 880 don't forget?
 S: 881 [+ + +] your moustache and:
 T: 882 to breed your moustache!
 S: 883 to bring
 T: 884 to bring?
 S: 885 yes
 SS: 886 /to have/
 T: 887 please bring a moustache with you! a big moustache!
 S: 888 no, no, YOUR MOUSTACHE is necessary huh
 T: 889 don't forget to- to let your beard and moustache grow
 SS: 890 /huh huh huh/
 T: 891 when you come to Iran, don't forget to let your beard and moustache grow, LONG
 S: 892 and chafiah (Arabian Scarf put on round the neck originally by Palestinian guerrillas)
 SS: 893 /huh huh huh/
 T: 894 and chafiah
 895 wear a chafiah on your shoulders
 896 that helps a lot, coming from England yeah
 897 he's asking for it
 898 if he does that the guy is asking for it asking for pro-trouble
 899 can you imagine an Englishman wearing a chafiah
 900 if he does that, nine times no nine out of ten they're they're going to question him why?
 901 They get suspicious
 902 ah, a British guy wearing a chafiah
 903 he's not coming from Lebanon
 SS: 904 /huh/
 T: 905 and question number four
 906 it's okay to bring this
 907 but it is [+ + +] what?
 S: 908 map of Iran
 T: 909 map of Iran
 910 we don't have to, yes
 S: 911 fresh fruit(.) canned food
 T: 912 ha?
 S: 913 canned food
 T: 914 we don't have to bring any canned food, yes
 S: 915 water
 T:

S: 916 you can buy it here

T: 917 handy

S: 918 handy!
919 what is handy?

T: 920 handy camera

S: 921 he doesn't have to
922 but maybe he wants to use his
mo- maybe

T: 923
[he can't use it in Iran]

S: 924 ha?

T: 925 he can't use it in Iran

S: 926 ah: he:: can't

T: 927 it doesn't work

S: 928 it won't work in Iran

T: 929 the systems are different

S: 930 systems are different
931 mobiles won't work in Iran
yeah

T: 932 but there are some kinds of-

S: 933 [by the
way when they say mobile
never work they call it cell
phone
934 cell c e l l (spells the word)
cell phones
935 I think mobile is British]

T: 936 cell phone, very nice

S: 937 American?

T: 938 American, let's go over the
things,
939 now you are supposed to get
with- get into- get into work
with your partner

S: 940 you have the items right, step
4
941 read over step 4

T: 942 [+ + +]

S: 943 step 4(.) with your partner
write sentences about one or
two items in each box
explaining why and
944 and I- I insist on this part
explain why you think they
belong here?
945 why should he have it in Iran?
946 why shouldn't he have it in
Iran?
947 say why?
948 example you say? you must-
949 for the first item give me an
example?

SS: 950 /ha has to/
T: 951 you mustn't- you must have?
952 your passport =
SS: 953 [/passport/
T: 954 = ha! you must bring your
passport
955 you must take your passport
956 because?
S: 957 you need an ID
T: 958 without- number one(.) we
need an ID-
959 without a passport they won't
LET YOU IN
S: 960 yes
T: 961 without a passport they won't
let you
962 give the reason
963 next for- for must(.) what do
you say?
964 with a different version or give
me another necessary item?
S: 965 tourist visa

T: 966 ah! yeah, you have to have ha?
SS: 967 [+ + +]
T: 968 you have to
S: 969 yes
T: 970 you have to have a tourist visa
=
SS: 971
[/a tourist visa/
T: 972 = because without a tourist
visa =
S: 973
[they don't let you in
T: 974 = they don't let you in
S: 975 what's a transit visa?
976 if you want to change for
example the airplane and stay
in the airport for a:
T: 977 [he doesn't want to stay in an
airport
978 he wants to come and stay
with you
979 he is your friend
980 he doesn't want to stay in the
transit- err in the transit
section
S: 981 yes I know, but for example in
when somebody
T: 982
[you need transit visa(.) they
don't [+ + +]
983 he is British
984 he can use his passport get on
any-
S: 985
[oh yes! just-
T: 986 the guy is British, okay?

987 now, you use- so for
obligations, and then for-
prohibitions
988 what is it?
S: 989 response of
T: 990 [give me a prohibition one
S: 991 a prohibition one for?
T: 992 you mustn't?
SS: 993 /you mustn't/
T: 994 bring a gun
SS: 995 [+ + +]
T: 996 because?
S: 997 it's against the law
T: 998 it's against the law, very good!
right?
999 going with ah: item three
1000 it's a good idea
SS: 1001 /you should//can bring it/
T: 1002 you should, ha?
1003 you should bring?
S: 1004 a laptop computer
T: 1005 a laptop computer
1006 you [+ + +] say using the
software for maps as if the guy
is going to go through a desert
S: 1007 no
T: 1008 huh huh
S: 1009 there are some packages
T: 1010 yeah
S: 1011 it's very err very much
information that we haven't
T:

<p>1012 [we don't have- you have a point 1013 maybe there are more information in those software than we can give him 1014 it is okay but he doesn't have to 1015 why? 1016 it is not really necessary</p> <p>S: 1017 you can't</p> <p>T: 1018 no! no!</p> <p>S: 1019 umbrella, map of Iran</p> <p>T: 1020 how do you say umbrellas class? 1021 (knocks on the table) how do you say that?</p> <p>S: 1022 you don't have to take umbrella with-</p> <p>T: 1023 [you don't have to take an umbrella, you can use mine</p> <p>S: 1024 yeah</p> <p>T: 1025 yeah? say [+ + +] your backpack, you don't- you don't have to bring your umbrella 1026 you don't have to take your umbrella, ha?</p> <p>S: 1027 [+ + +]</p> <p>T: 1028 why? 1029 because the guy is travelling all the way with a backpack and you are trying to save- you are trying to help him 1030 you- I'm sure you have plenty of umbrellas at home 1031 you can spare him one(.) all right 1032 ah write some sentences</p>	<p>1033 two sentences- you can use the back of- you can use this here's the back of- (pair work)</p> <p>T: 1034 all right, done? 1035 are you all done?</p> <p>SS: 1036 [+ + +]</p> <p>T: 1037 very nice! let us trun to- to page three 1038 let us read the grammar 1039 modals of necessity prohibition and permission 1040 there some examples examples are given 1041 somebody reads over the examples 1042 could you please? (student reads over)</p> <p>T: 1043 yeah, when they speak, these are the three types of obligations 1044 when it's mandatory, you must have a passport, you have to(.) right? 1045 you must have- main verb is have 1046 you have to have a passport or?</p> <p>S: 1047 [+ + +]</p> <p>T: 1048 you've(.) got to(.) have a passport 1049 you've got to means you have got- I mean you speak- you don't say you have got to 1050 you say you've got to have a passport, right? 1051 you've got to have a passport 1052 and you never say YOU'VE HAVE 1053 you don't say you've 1054 you say you have to 1055 you don't say you've to have not here 1056 have is have</p>
--	--

- 1057 you have to and you make
the stress on that
- 1058 and v is pronounced like a:
- 1059 you have to, not you [hav: to]
- 1060 so these are obligations
- 1061 you have to have a passport
- 1062 explanation on that use
- 1063 must, have to or have got to
show something is necessary
and obligatory
- 1064 something that strongly is
required often by law
- 1065 next item please?
- S:
1066 (reads out)
- T:
1067 excellent! Must not cannot
1068 and specially in this situation
they write it like can- cannot
together
1069 and they read it [cana:t] not
can not
1070 bring fresh fruit into Iran
right?
1071 cannot, you mustn't you must
not
1072 these are the negative
1073 these are the prohibitions
right?
1074 you must not mustn't or
cannot or can't to show
something is prohibited, and
absolutely not permitted
again(.) often by law
1075 let's go for the next item
1076 item F please?
- S:
T:
(reads out)
- 1077 use can to show something is
permitted
- 1078 you can- permissions are-
are- you use can in cases of
permission
- 1079 you can bring your surf board
- 1080 you can if you want to
- 1081 err but if you say you should
bring a credit card it's a- you
should bring your credit card
means it's a good idea
- 1082 something which is a good
idea
- 1083 can is permission
- 1084 should good idea
- 1085 you should bring your
camera because I think it's a
good idea to have a camera
- 1086 you take beautiful pictures
right?
- 1087 and the last item?
- 1088 you don't have to, right?
- 1089 you don't have to
- 1090 what is the: usage? you don't
have to bring a surf board
- 1091 why?
- 1092 you can if you want but it's
not recommended
- 1093 and I don't think he- nobody-
iS: is not necessary
- 1094 why isn't it necessary to
bring a surf board?
- 1095 you can always rent one
- 1096 it's huge
- 1097 you have carried with you
out in and out of the airport
- 1098 you have to check it in the
baggage
- 1099 may be they nag
- 1100 what is this?
- 1101 you have to put in the
package
- 1102 they- they might come up
with all sorts of alibis, right?
- 1103 ah and you can easily rent
one in Iran
- 1104 so you don't have to bring
any to Iran
- 1105 this is when(.) use do not or
don't have to to show
something is permitted but not
necessary
- 1106 you can do this if you want
to, okay?
- 1107 very well! now, any
questions?
- S:
1108 please spell alibi
- T:
1109 I think it is with one here
1110 let me check (checks with the
digital dictionary)

1111 yeah, I said they might come
by with all kinds of alibi to
refuse accepting it

1112 yes I'm right

1113 alibi means an excuse, all
right?

1114 a strong excuse

1115 a very good excuse, alibi

S:

1116 what is the usage?

T:

1117 the usage!

1118 let us say somebody comes
late to class every to every day
every session and this session
come late again

1119 I say okay! B what is your
alibi this time?

1120 referring to as an excuse but
with a stronger sense

1121 like alibi in a court of law

1122 somebody is accused of
murder

1123 if he can come up with a
strong reason or good alibi to
prove he was not in the scene

1124 he was not in that city

1125 he was somewhere else

1126 that's an alibi

1127 any questions with this
structures?

1128 this one is used a lot in
spoken English especially in
American English

1129 they use, you've got to right?

1130 very nice

1131 go back to the sentences you
wrote and err check to see you
have- have used it correctly
using these modal auxiliary

1132 if you didn't rewrite the
sentences

1133 if you made mistakes rewrite
it

1134 if you have made mistakes
correct them

S:

1135 I should have take, when we
err reduce the water for body
what is(.) what is?

T:

1136 reduce the water of the body
1137 sweating?

S:

1138 err d i r e h e o

1139 T:

1140 what?

S:

1141 d i r h e o u

T:

1142 [+ + +]

S:

1143 what's that?

T:

1144 oh! diarrhoea! I see!
diarrhoea!

1145 you lose the body water it's
diarrhoea

S:

1146 diarrhoea?

T:

1147 diarrhoea is a sickness

1148 diarrhoea is when you have
to go to the bathroom

1149 you can't stop going to the
bathroom

S:

1150 yeah, we-

T:

1151 diarrhoea

S:

1152 ria

T:

1153 RIA yeah but the
pronunciation is diarrhoea

1154 spelling is very strange, yeah

1155 diarrhoea is a sickness, is an
illness

T:

1156 done?

SS:

1157 yes

T:

1158 very good, let us read some
of the sentences

1159 you are[+ + +] in the mustn't
section

1160 please, H?

S:

1161 you must bring your passport
with you, because they don't
let you come in

T: 1162 if you don't have a passport
yeah
1163 you must have a passport
1164 you must take your passport
1165 take- you must take your
passport because without it
they won't let you in, very
good! yes?

S: 1166 you have to bring some
money because I don't have
much money to [+ + +]

T: 1167 huh you have to bring some
money

S: 1168 because I don't have much
money to pay for you

T: 1169 I don't have ANY to pay
you, yeah
1170 you have to take some money
1171 take is a good phrase
1172 you must take some money
with you, because I don't have
any
1173 I was hoping you could lend
some, yes?

S: 1174 you have to have a tourist
visa because they wouldn't let
you come in

T: 1175 you have to have a tourist
via, exactly!
1176 they- because they wouldn't
let you come in without one
1177 WITHOUT a tourist visa

S: 1178 you must have a passport to
be allowed to inter

T: 1179 you must have a passport to
be allowed to enter
1180 yeah(.) more formal way

S: 1181 you must take your return
airline ticket because without
it when you are going to

come- come back make you
problems

T: 1182 you must read that again

S: 1183 you must take your return
airline ticket because without
it when you are going to come
back

T: 1184 when you are returning
you're going to come back
1185 is- he's not coming back HE
IS GOING BACK

S: 1186 yeah, it make you problems

T: 1187 because without it- it: [+ + +]
you problem- problem when
you are going back
1188 when you are going back

S: 1189 when can you use should? do
err

S: 1190 yes

T: 1191 it's a must
1192 you must have a return ticket

S: 1193 but you don't have your
ticket you can bought it in Iran

T: 1194 you can buy it in Iran, yeah
1195 but again(.) he or she would
be losing a lot of money
1196 it's a good idea to- he must
have it, yes?

S: 1197 you must take my address
and my telephone number
because if for any reason we
can't find each other in the
airport =

T: 1198 [at the airport

S: 1199 = you can find me easily

T: 1200 can easily find me EASILY

S: 1201 can we say without it you don't have any references to find me?

T: 1202 without- without it you don't have any references to find me
1203 yeah, any references
1204 you're okay
1205 you don't speak like this
1206 you are not writing ah because this is like a-
1207 I don't know, you write for a court of law like a reference to find somebody, yeah?

S: 1208 if we can't find each other or if we couldn't find each other?

T: 1209 yeah, depending on- on what is the probability
1210 if you and I rearrange to meet somewhere in the middle of the desert I say if we can't find each other because the probability is very high
1211 but at Mehrabad airport if we couldn't find each other
1212 because most of the time 99% of the time I won't- we won't miss each other
1213 in the middle of the desert, if you can't find me
1214 it's difficult(.) almost very possible, couldn't when this is- the probability is low, very nice

S: 1215 [+ + +]

T: 1216 let us go- did you have all musts? yes?
1217 have to have got to

S: 1218 yes

T: 1219 use have got to one

S: 1220 you don't have got to take

T: 1221 a:h that's a don't have to have
1222 see this is only for must or [+ + +] must have to, got to obligations
1223 don't is- you don't have to-
1224 we can't use them in the negative
1225 in the negative it's you don't have to, right?

S: 1226 yes

T: 1227 is- don't have to, there is no other versions go with the musts

S: 1228 with must?

T: 1229 aha

S: 1230 we don't must take a map of Iran

SS: 1231 /huh//you must not//you mustn't/

T: 1232 you must not have a map of Iran because?

S: 1233 because err if you don't take the map you can't ask about something that you don't know from people of Iran

T: 1234 you said you must not have a map

S: 1235 yes, you must not have a map

T: 1236 it's illegal to have a map of Iran!

S: 1237 you don't have to

T: 1238 you don't have to
1239 this is you don't have to yeah?

S: 1240 yes

S:

1241 we want to say you don't have to but you said maybe with must
T:

1242 no! no! I was saying- I was saying do you have- since we were dealing with the first item which is must
1243 I said have- did you have a must sentence
1244 if not it's all right
1245 you don't have any must
1246 that's your- you don't have to
1247 I was talking about the first category
1248 the first category box one musts and then mustn'ts
1249 are we done with musts? yes?
S:

1250 I think they are part of four
T:

1251 no! no! part one
S:

1252 you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because it's against the law
T:

1253 you are going with mustn't
1254 you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because it's against the law, yes?
S:

1255 in another structure, you mustn't bring tapes and CDs because of being against the law
T:

1256 because of- all right, wrong!
1257 you can't use it
1258 you can not use this structure, because *it is* against the law
1259 you have to change the structure in verb-
1260 you have to go for a version being against the law, you cannot or you must not bring any tapes
1261 being against the law
1262 you start your sentence like that, being against the law

comma(.) you must not bring any tapes
S:

1263 they are against the law
T:

1264 yeah, because they are against the law
S:

1265 and because it is a forbidden
T:

1266 it is forbidden, IT IS!
S:

1267 with a or without a
T:

1268 forbidden is an adjective
1269 because it is forbidden
1270 it is wrong
1271 it is bad
1272 forbidden is an adjective, fine
1273 more mustn't, yes?
S:

1274 you mustn't take alcoholic drinks to Iran because we have an Islamic government and it's forbidden
T:

1275 it is forbidden
1276 you mustn't take alcoholic drinks WITH you
1277 you mustn't take or you mustn't bring
1278 bring here is a good verb
1279 you mustn't bring alcoholic drinks into Iran
1280 because it is, because what?
S:

1281 because we have a Islamic government
T:

1282 an Islamic Government, an Islamic government
1283 and it is [against the law
S:

1284 [it is forbidden
S:

1285 it is cheaper
S:

1286 can we say?
T:

1287 it is cheaper in Iran!

1288 huh huh huh get out of here!
 1289 is it?
 SS:
 1290 /yes/
 S:
 1291 can we say don't bring
 alcoholic drinks?
 T:
 1292 don't bring
 1293 yeah, of course
 1294 you are not using- this is err
 this is an imperative statement
 1295 you are ordering the person
 1296 mustn't is a mustn't, you are
 not ordering,
 1297 but although you can say
 that(.) don't bring
 S:
 1298 you mustn't have drugs
 because you will be arrested as
 an smuggler
 T:
 1299 yeah, you mustn't have
 drugs, because you will be
 arrested as a smuggler
 1300 [+ + +] for smuggling drugs
 1301 this guy is not a smuggler
 S:
 1302 you mustn't bring drugs
 because we haven't- we have
 it here as much as you want
 T:
 1303 aha! there- it is?
 1304 you don't have to it's not
 1305 you mustn't you don't have
 to bring drugs
 SS:
 1306 huh huh huh
 T:
 1307 are you sure Sohail?
 S:
 1308 we can hear all the day
 T:
 1309 what do you know about the
 drug of choices
 S:
 1310 he knows it very well
 T:
 1311 you don't- he knows it very
 well
 1312 huh all right go on
 SS:
 1313 huh huh huh
 T:
 1314 he's your close friend
 1315 yeah, every day on computer
 he tells about the high- he
 guess fine huh huh huh
 1316 very good!
 1317 did you write anything about
 can?
 1318 You can?
 S:
 1319 you can't bring
 T:
 1320 you can't bring?
 S:
 1321 sexually explicit because
 they are not absolutely
 prohibited
 T:
 1322 exactly, you can't bring any
 1323 you can't
 1324 not permitted
 1325 you can't bring any sexually
 explicit magazines
 S:
 1326 you can find in Iran
 T:
 1327 don't give me that!
 1328 you say everything is
 available here
 S:
 1329 yes
 T:
 1330 it's not!
 1331 it's where- err maybe you
 can find something
 somewhere
 1332 it's not like that
 1333 all right, very well
 1334 we don't have to, the
 sentences with don't have to?
 S:
 1335 yes(.) you don't have to take
 an umbrella with yourself
 because you can buy it in Iran
 T:
 1336 you can!
 1337 thank you very much!
 1338 can't you lend yours?
 1339 can't you lend me yours?

<p>S: 1340 we can't</p> <p>S: 1341 you can use mine</p> <p>T: 1342 you can use mine 1343 I- I have an extra one</p> <p>SS: 1344 /you can use mine/</p> <p>T: 1345 you can use mine 1346 very good(.) yes?</p> <p>S: 1347 you don't have to bring a map of Iran because you can find it easily</p> <p>T: 1348 you can find it easily in Iran</p> <p>S: 1349 you don't have to bring your cell phone because you can't use it here</p> <p>T: 1350 you don't have to</p> <p>S: 1351 because it doesn't work from [+ + +]</p> <p>S: 1352 you don't have your cell phone because you can't use it in Iran</p> <p>T: 1353 you don't have to BRING- you don't have to take your cell phone 1354 ah not! it's a should =</p> <p>SS: 1355 [/you should/</p> <p>T: 1356 you shouldn't take your cell phone because 1357 negative- negative is suggested 1358 you shouldn't take your cell phone because it is- it doesn't work in Iran 1359 ah we don't have to</p> <p>S: 1360 is it right?</p> <p>T:</p>	<p>S: 1361 it's all right 1362 you say you don't have to</p> <p>S: 1363 you don't have to bring some books and magazines because you can find English books in Iran</p> <p>T: 1364 bravo! 1365 you don't have to bring books or magazines 1366 you'll find them in Iran 1367 nice(.) excellent 1368 let us move on</p> <p>S: 1369 is it correct? 1370 you don't have to bring a surf board because in Iran we don't have ocean</p> <p>T: 1371 huh huh you don't have to bring your surf board 1372 there is a better reason 1373 if that is the case you say-</p> <p>S: 1374 [what is [+ + +] we don't have the same as</p> <p>T: 1375 [we do 1376 in the south of Iran in the south people surf</p> <p>S: 1377 because most of the err the sea that they have connected with the:</p> <p>T: 1378 [oceans 1379 1380 they have big waves, but that does not mean you cannot surf 1381 maybe he is not a professional surfer 1382 let us move to exercise 3 1383 work with the partner, okay? 1384 somebody reads this 1385 B? (student reads out)</p> <p>T:</p>
--	--

1386 these are the musts, must
have to, have got to, good

1387 go to the items the

1388 err with your partner, go over
these items and see which
ones are obligatory(.) to get
the drivers' license

1389 let put a check mark next to
the- to the err mandatory ones

S:

1390 there are some obligatories
that err here didn't mention

T:

1391 which is not mentioned
1392 add them
1393 add those to your list
(pair work)

T:

1394 did you pick the mandatory
ones? yes?
1395 did you check the ones that
are necessary?
1396 items that are necessary?

S:

1397 [+ + +]

T:

1398 let us see which items you
got

SS:

1399 [+ + +]

T:

1400 hold on! hold on please!
1401 let- are you doing your non-
dones?
1402 okay(.) hold on, wait
1403 I thought everybody it was

S:

1404 medical examinations?

T:

1405 medical examinations
1406 probably, yeah I think it is
mandatory
1407 I think you need a medical
exam, don't we?

SS:

1408 /no//yes/

T:

1409 you and I must not comment
on this
1410 we got our drivers' license
many years ago

1411 let us ask the young ones

SS:

1412 /yes/

T:

1413 hold on! hold on! time, time

S:

1414 [+ + +] is one of my biggest
problems
1415 I have been failed for four
times

T:

1416 and the reason was?

S:

1417 and the reason,
1418 I don't know sometimes they
say that the starting was

T:

1419
[no! no! we're talking about
medical exam

SS:

1420 /yes//oh, yes we have it/

S:

1421 visit some people like
medical exam

T:

1422 medical exam, to ta- to take a
medical exam, before the test

SS:

1423 [+ + +]

S:

1424 say to you to run
1425 when you ran they say sit and
stand again
1426 so that err

T:

1427 to make sure that you have
strong legs

S:

1428 and shake your hands

T:

1429 shake your hands
1430 what's-

S:

1431 [no, sit down and stand up, if
you can do it err err

T:

1432 not a serious one
1433 sort of medical exam

S:

1434 sometimes it needed

T: 1435 sometimes it is necessary
S: 1436 it is necessary for someone who err err
T: 1437 somebody who?
S: 1438 who(.) seemed to use drugs
T: 1439 who takes drugs or looks like a drug addict, all right
S: 1440 [+ + +] someone I know
1441 because if he find someone speak loudly they give you some paper to give examination about your alkoholi (drunken) or err your about your drugs
1442 the same as this(.) if you don't anything-
T: 1443 if you're nice to them they are nice to you
SS: 1444 huh huh
S: 1445 some people have artificial legs but they have driver license
T: 1446 I know(.) like me I have a disability but I do have a drivers' license
1447 I have- this is a disability but I went for a medical test
S: 1448 [+ + +]
T: 1449 unfortunately
S: 1450 I mean
T: 1451 [the club I was- I was [+ + +] the motorcycle club
1452 I was within the States but for a long time, to err to re-renew my- my license my license to ride a motorcycle
1453 they couldn't

S: 1454 in some cities like khoramabad, I have heard that they get to a drug test
1455 are you addict to it or not
T: 1456 whether you are addict or not [+ + +] all right
1457 let us see what are those items
1458 are musts err tick mark the musts
1459 number one, what is the item?
1460 make the sentence
SS: 1461 /you must know/
T: 1462 you must know how to drive
1463 obviously number one
1464 you must know how to drive
1465 what is the next item?
SS: 1466 /you must practice before the test/
T: 1467 is that a must?
SS: 1468 /yes//no/
1469 T:
1470 nobody is forcing you
1471 you can if you want
1472 you- it's not a must
S: 1473 if you don't err practice before the test you can't
S: 1474 [necessity
T: 1475 why?
1476 maybe I can
1477 nobody is forcing you
1478 nobody is forcing you
1479 is anybody putting a gun to your head GO PRACTICE?
S: 1480 no but [+ + +]
T: 1481 then must is not a good choice

1482 be careful! must is not a good choice
1483 let's talk, yeah?
S:
1484 it's why to be necessary after Nowrooz (New Year) holiday to have about 30 hours in a driving, I don't know Amoozeshgah (Persian word for driving school)
T:
1485 oh, one of the schools-driving schools
S:
1486 yes
T:
1487 but it says before the test right?
1488 the day before the test
S:
1489 [+ + +]
T:
1490 I know
1491 no! no! this is not
1492 but they have it means the day before the test
1493 is that a must?
SS:
1494 [+ + +]
T:
1495 no, what is the other item?
SS:
1496 take an eye test
T:
1497 take an eye test
SS:
1498 /yes//we must take an test/
T:
1499 yeah(.) can we use other forms?
S:
1500 you have to
T:
1501 you have to?
SS:
1502 /take an eye test/
T:
1503 take an eye test
1504 another form?
SS:
1505 /you've got to take an eye test/
T:
1506 you've got to take an eye test
1507 err but eye test is very- so must is a- a very strong- you have- must is a good err good choice
1508 what about the next item?
SS:
1509 /you must take written test/
T:
1510 [you must take a written test
1511 next item?
SS:
1512 /no//you have to/
T:
1513 before examination you have to have medical examination
1514 next item?
SS:
1515 [/no you haven't/
T:
1516 I know
1517 they say- you guys- you guys are saying different things
1518 I don't know
S:
1519 it's physical not
S:
1520 [but they say
T:
1521 [yeah, physical exam and medical exam are- medical exam-
1522 but some of you guys are saying they send you for a drug test
1523 so, it could be
1524 I don't know, it is- it is vague
S:
1525 it's a controversy
T:
1526 controversy- not controversial
1527 it's a vague issue
1528 it might [+ + +] it might not
S:
1529 you have to a birth certificate
T:

1530 you have to have a birth certificate or an ID
 1531 have to, next item?
 SS: 1532 / you have pass a driving test
 T: 1533 you have to pass a driving test,
 1534 next item?
 SS: 1535 /no/
 T: 1536 no, pass your diploma is not mandatory?
 SS: 1537 /no/
 T: 1538 so what to say?
 SS: 1539 /you don't have to/
 T: 1540 you don't have to have a high school diploma
 1541 but you don't have to have a diploma, right?
 S: 1542 no
 S: 1543 yes
 S: 1544 you should have one of these
 1545 you should have a diploma
 1546 you should hav- studying in university, or pass the military service
 S: 1547 yes
 S: 1548 no
 SS: 1549 it's not necessary
 S: 1550 if you can write
 1551 S:
 1552 you should have military service or you-
 S: 1553 [must [+ + +]
 S: 1554 most of the drivers can not read or write
 T: 1555 read or write
 1556 is that right?
 1557 I don't know you guys know much better than I do
 S: 1558 if you are a male you must have a discharge certificate =
 T: 1559
 [discharge certificate
 S: 1560 = or an exemption card
 T: 1561 or an exemption card from military service
 1562 that's the only requirement?
 S: 1563 no
 T: 1564 do you have to have a high school diploma?
 SS: 1565 /no/
 T: 1566 so, you don't have to have a high school diploma
 S: 1567 is it obligatory in other countries or [+ + +]
 S: 1568 and also
 T: 1569 in America?
 1570 you know what- but they have drivers' education in the high school
 1571 they call it Drivers' Ed.
 1572 e d for education and err err students before one of they-
 1573 they are taught as one of the subjects in high school
 1574 they are- they can drive under 16
 1575 they take it while they are in high school
 1576 they call it a Drivers' Ed. and most people, I don't- but I don't know the law
 1577 I don't know whether it is mandatory or not

1578 I think it is, if I am not mistaken

S: 1579 [+ + +]

T: 1580 age limit is 15 or 16, yeah

S: 1581 Iran is 18

T: 1582 in Iran is 18, all right
1583 err what is the next item?
1584 own a car

SS: 1585 /no/

T: 1586 you have not
1587 let go back again on that
1588 have an international drivers' license, it's a must

SS: 1589 /not/

T: 1590 not
1591 so let us go back on the items which were not obligatory
1592 see what kind of- which of these modals we can use to make sentences with them
1593 example(.) wise practice before the test

S: 1594 we don't have to

T: 1595 you don't have to practice

SS: 1596 /you should//you should not/

T: 1597 you should practice

S: 1598 excuse me, if UK drivers sit in right and in Iran sit in left and I think err we have to err

T: 1599 [this is not your friend-
1600 your friend- he came, he left he said goodbye(.) he thanked you a lot
1601 thank you very much
1602 I really enjoyed a wonderful stay in Iran

1603 this is not you
1604 no, this is a different story
1605 this has nothing to do with your friend
1606 obviously people coming from Great Britain to Iran, and vice versa
1607 I think it is terrible to drive fine
1608 so in the second one you don't have to practice before the test
1609 but you can if you want to
1610 it's a good suggestion, good suggestion
1611 you should practice before the test
1612 next one, take an eye test was mandatory
1613 take a written test was mandatory
1614 have medical examination I did not- I did not- I didn't know
1615 somebody- some say yes some say-
1616 so that's still remaining to majority
1617 have a passport or birth certificate for the must
1618 passing a driving test first a must
1619 have a high school diploma-

SS: 1620 no

T: 1621 we don't have to have- own a car

SS: 1622 you don't have to

T: 1623 you don't have to own a car here
1624 actually they won't let you drive your car
1625 am I right?
1626 you can take your own car on the day of the test
1627 you have to use their car on the day of the test

SS: 1628 and the last one, have an international drivers' license?
 1629 /no/
 T: 1630 you don't have to, it won't help you
 S: 1631 international drivers' license you wouldn't have passed the exam
 T: 1632 in Iran?
 S: 1633 yes
 T: 1634 if you have a drivers' - an international drivers' license?
 S: 1635 you wouldn't
 T: 1636 [you won't
 1637 you won't pass the exam?
 S: 1638 you wouldn't have
 S: 1639 you wouldn't have to pass the exam
 S: 1640 it's not necessary
 T: 1641 ha! It (.) if you =
 S: 1642 [you wouldn't have to pass
 T: 1643 = you wouldn't have to- take the- you- you- you wouldn't have to take the exams, right?
 1644 do they- drivers'- international drivers'
 S: 1645 yes
 T: 1646 they just give you one?
 S: 1647 yes
 T: 1648 I didn't know that
 SS: 1649 /no/
 S:

1650 if you have a drivers' license of Iran they give you an international, but if you have an international, you must do err
 T: 1651
 [I think you must take a test no?
 S: 1652 yes
 T: 1653 I have to disagree(.) no sir!
 we are [+ + +] I don't think so
 SS: 1654 [+ + +]
 T: 1655 let us say, I have an international drivers'- class!
 1656 can I have your attention please?
 1657 Let us say I have an international drivers' license issued in the state of California and I bring that international drivers' license in Iran with me
 1658 I take it to the DNV here
 1659 whatever they call it, Edarah Rahnamaii vah Ranandaghi
 1660 they call it DNV, Department of Motor Vehicles
 1661 I take it to the DNV in Iran and I say, okay(.) this is my international drivers' license
 1662 giving me an Iranian license(.) would they?
 S: 1663 [drivers' license from the States, they don't accept
 T: 1664 they won't accept it
 S: 1665 if you have an international drivers' so that it is international
 T: 1666 yeah
 S: 1667 don't have to
 SS:

T: 1668 [+ + +]
 T: 1669 we can drive temporarily with an international drivers' license
 T: 1670 you can drive temporarily not for ever
 S: 1671 to have driving license from the other country, drivers' license not international
 T: 1672 not international
 S: 1673 and I go to DMV
 T: 1674 in Iran?
 S: 1675 in Iran, as to change to Iranian, is possible takes
 S: 1676 just eye test necessary just eye test
 T: 1677 I'm sorry sir!
 T: 1678 in my case they did not accept it
 S: 1679 because you just from United States- United States
 T: 1680
 S: [is not accepted
 T: 1681 and, and
 T: 1682 England is not accepted
 S: 1683 this is I think [+ + +] visa it's eyes to eyes but to say it?
 T: 1684 eye against eye!
 S: 1685 yes
 T: 1686 huh huh oh! an eye for an eye
 S: 1687 yes because-
 T: 1688 [this is an eye for an eye treatment, yes
 S: 1689 for example England doesn't accept all driving license
 T: 1690 they do say is not accepted
 T: 1691 makes sense- it makes sense an eye for an eye treatment, I see
 S: 1692 all right
 S: 1693 the last task for tonight
 T: 1694 do you know how to get a drivers' license in the United Kingdom?
 S: 1695 our guest knows
 T: 1696 he knows, but we don't
 S: 1697 our job is to get together, and yes make a guess work in groups of three
 S: 1698 get into groups of three
 T: 1699 do you know how to get a drivers' license in the United kingdom?
 S: 1700 what do you have- guess?
 T: 1701 what do you have to do to get a license there?
 S: 1702 Class! let me have your attention for a second
 T: 1703 just a second
 S: 1704 I'm very sorry, this is the last
 T: 1705 do you know how to get a drivers' license in the United Kingdom?
 S: 1706 no
 T: 1707 what do you- yeah, you don't know
 S: 1708 now, you have to make some guesses
 T: 1709 what do you have to do to get a license there?
 S: 1710 in what ways is it different here in Iran compared to one there?
 T: 1711 talk to your partner
 S: 1712 find out what he knows
 T: 1713 should be ready to report
 S: 1714 we should guess?

T: 1715 of course(.) if you don't know you have to make guesses
1716 make some have to, don't have to, must, make some sentences in your discussion (group work)

T: 1717 all right, let us see what you guys came up with
1718 what do you think the procedure is like in England?
1719 What are mandatory?
1720 give me the mandatory ones?

S: 1721 is it important that we know what happens in England?

T: 1722 I don't know
1723 I don't think it is very important but don't you- aren't you guys interested to know the way they do it?
1724 is it that interesting to you?

S: 1725 I don't you know what-

T: 1726 [let me- let me make it easier for you

S: 1727 [but we don't know everything about it
1728 for example if Mr A

T: 1729 I will ask Mr A
1730 but before asking him let me put you guys to work
1731 err what are the things you- you think is mandatory necessary, musts, and mustn'ts?

S: 1732 you have to know how to drive and you must take an eye test

T: 1733 Mr A you give us a right or wrong err corrections
1734 you have to know how to drive
1735 you must take an eye test?

A: 1736 [+ + +]

T: 1737 the procedure is different, but you have to have, you have to take a test
1738 you are right

S: 1739 of course in our DNV in Iran

T: 1740 DNV in Iran

S: 1741 yes, we have err again that system

T: 1742 that's right
1743 the time has changed Mr A now
1744 we- they do the same way
1745 when you go- not- they don't ask you to read the license plate of the car but they have these E signs
1746 somebody asks you, left right, up, down, and you go [+ + +]
1747 you don't go to a GP to check, to examine you, okay

S: 1748 you must own car

T: 1749 you must own your car

S: 1750 you must- you can

T: 1751 [do you think that is right?

S: 1752 you can if you have

T: 1753 if you don't have your own?

S: 1754 you can go and buy a car

T: 1755 go and buy a car huh, Mr A again

A: 1756[+ + +]
T: 1757 how much?
A: 1758 I don't know
T: 1759 they [+ + +] you can rent
their cars
S: 1760 you have to have a high
school diploma
T: 1761 Mr A?
A:
T: 1762 no
S: 1763 you have to educate in
Driving Schools(.) for
example for a special time
S: 1764 you have to have- I think
that's what B said.

T5 (1ST Session)

- T:
1 shall we get started?
- SS:
2 yes
- T:
3 what?
4 so are you up to date?
5 You are fine?
6 You are all right?
- SS:
7 [+ + +]
- T:
8 what?
- S:
9 [+ + +] later
- T:
10 you arrived late
11 you were late for lessons ha?
12 hay you are a new student ha?
13 We didn't have you here yesterday
- S:
14 now I couldn't make it
- T:
15 you couldn't make it
16 why couldn't you make it?
- S:
17 I had a class in my university
- T:
18 you had a class in your university?
- S:
19 yes
- T:
20 what was your class?
- S:
21 statics
- T:
22 statics
23 statics?
- S:
24 yes
- T:
25 ha you mean mechanics statics?
- S:
26 yes yes
- T:
27 but you were talking about statistics
while it was statics ha?
- S:
28 yes
- T:
29 all right anybody else is new?
30 You're new ha?
31 And you too?
32 so Mr M?
- S:
33 yes
- T:
34 here you are Mr: G
35 you were absent yesterday ha?
36 Could you brief us about yourself?
37 introduce yourself to the class
- S:
38 I am Reza
39 I am 7 years old
40 man daghighan namidonam (I don't
know the exact word) civil engineering
- T:
41 you are a civil engineer
42 and you work anywhere?
- S:
43 yes
- T:
44 where do you work?
- S:
45 a company
- T:
46 a company
47 private company?
- S:
48 what?
- T:
49 do you work for a private company?
- S:
50 semi- private
- T:
51 all right and we were asking questions
about people's salaries here
52 what about your salary?
53 is it satisfactory?
- S:
54 what salary?
- T:
55 your salary
56 your salary ha?
- S:
57 yes
- T:
58 so what?
59 How much is that?
60 is it secret?
- S:

61 yes
T:
62 yes?
63 all right you wanna keep your secret
64 it doesn't matter
65 you can remain silent huh huh
66 so anything else about yourself?
S:
67 nothing
T:
68 nothing special
69 what about your last teacher?
70 who was your last teacher?
71 Who was your last teacher's rank?
72 and what was your final score?
S:
73 A minus
T:
74 A minus
75 Mr R?
76 He is absent?
SS:
77 yes
T:
78 Mr K?
S:
79 A
T:
80 A?
81 Is that you?
82 say us about yourself
83 you were not here yesterday?
S:
84 yes
T:
85 why not?
S:
86 I stay at school I haven't [+ + +]
T:
87 theoretical?
S:
88 exam
T:
89 right how old are you?
S:
90 sixteen
T:
91 sixteen years old
92 and what are you studying at high school?
S:

93 we have err physic class
T:
94 physics?
S:
95 yes
T:
96 math and physics
S:
97 physics
T:
98 I am not talking about your classes yesterday
99 err your field of study
100 your major
101 what's that?
S:
102 err our teacher haven't time at school err
T:
103 ok listen I am not talking about your yesterday classes ha?
104 Asking about your major
105 your field of study
S:
106 in high school I study mathematics
T:
107 mathematics
108 what school did you go to?
S:
109 what?
T:
110 what school do you go to?
S:
111 Alammah Tabatabii
T:
112 Alammah Tabatabii
113 where is it?
S:
114 err Ghisha
T:
115 Ghisha
116 all right who was your last teacher?
S:
117 Mr V
T:
118 Mr V
119 what was your final score?
120 your score?
S:
121 I can't see it
T:

122 you haven't taken it yet?
S: 123 no
T: 124 so how how did take this class without
S: [I see my name in the list
T: 125 in my list?
S: 126 yes
T: 127 all right
128 but before registering to this term you should check whether you have passed or
S: 129 I can't check it
T: 130 whether you're passed or failed ha?
S: 131 no I couldn't
T: 132 so are you sure you've passed? or not?
S: 133 yes but err
T: 134 this doesn't mean that you are passed
135 but your name in my list doesn't necessarily mean that you're passed actually the examination
S: 136 [+ + +]
T: 137 ha?
S: 138 I will see my last err score
T: 139 all right check the letter
140 Me Z
141 He is absent?
SS: 142 yes
T: 143 Mr F you are new to this class?
S: 144 yes
T: 145 tell us about yourself
S: 146 my name is V

147 and I am 20 years old
148 I am a university student and study mechanical engineering and
T: 149 chemical engineering
S: 150 yes I love sports
T: 151 you love sports
152 what sports do you like?
S: 153 everything
T: 154 any kind of sport?
S: 155 I like most of the sports basketball
T: 156 how do you make time [+ + +] with the sports
S: 157 I just go to the university two days a week
T: 158 two days a week?
S: 159 yes
T: 160 what university?
S: 161 Tehran centre
T: 162 Azad?
S: 163 yes
T: 164 Azad university?
S: 165 central branch
T: 166 good and you work anywhere ha?
S: 167 no
T: 168 err your last teacher?
S: 169 this is the first time I come to this institute
T: 170 so where did study before?
171 I mean where do you study English before?

S: 172 nowhere
T: 173 nowhere
174 you just studied English on your own?
S: 175 no I was abroad
T: 176 aha how many years?
S: 177 for a years
T: 178 for?
S: 179 one year
T: 180 one year only
S: 181 [+ + +]
T: 182 what state
S: 183 Washington
S: 184 Washington DC
S: 185 not Washington DC Washington state
T: 186 ha
S: 187 Seattle
T: 188 that's it
189 so why did you come back?
S: 190 my mum and dad is broke
191 that come back
T: 192 yeah
S: 193 not recently but several years ago
194 eight years ago
T: 195 so Mr F
196 err you are not related to the clergies
are you?
S: 197 what?
T: 198 you are not related to the clergies ha?
S: 199 by clergies what do you mean?
T: 200 oh you know clergy man?
S: 201 no idea
T: 202 you don't know clergy man?
S: 203 no
T: 204 well actually (.) in Iran we call them
Mollas
S: 205 no I am not
T: 206 you are actually F but
207 you know
S: 208 not at all
T: 209 oh why not?
210 All right Mr B?
S: 211 yes
T: 212 Mr K?
S: 213 yes
T: 214 here you are
215 you haven't found a crown princess
yesterday?
SS: 216 huh
T: 217 ha?
218 aha you said you had a girl friend ha?
219 All right her name was a secret (.) as
far as I remember
S: 220 a secret
T: 221 it was honestly a secret or you didn't
tell us?
S: 222 [+ + +]
T: 223 [+ + +] necessary
224 ok and what about you sir?
S: 225 Ali N

T: 226 Mr
S: 227 N
228 you were absent yesterday and you arrived the class late
S: 229 yes
T: 230 how are you today?
S: 231 fine
T: 232 you're fine?
233 are you sure?
234 certain?
S: 235 not exactly
T: 236 how?
237 so you give us uncertain answers ha?
S: 238 yes
T: 239 tell us about yourself
S: 240 I am 20 years old
241 and I am a student in the university err
T: 242 what do you study?
S: 243 civil engineering
244 err I work too
T: 245 where?
246 Where do you work?
S: 247 in Jam Jam
T: 248 so [+ + +] ha?
S: 249 yeah
T: 250 who?
251 There is another?
252 he is absent? Ok
S: 253 and err (.) about what?
T: 254 how is life?
S: 255 err about fiancé?
T: 256 you have a fiancé?
S: 257 yeah
T: 258 so we would like a sweet ha? Huh
S: 259 [+ + +]
T: 260 anything?
261 so err what university did you go to?
S: 262 Azad Karaj
T: 263 ha Azad university
264 ok and your teacher last time
265 who was he?
S: 266 Mr E
T: 267 Mr. E
268 your final score?
S: 269 err
T: 270 you haven't taken it yet
271 make sure that you will take your final score
272 thank you very much
273 so I guess I've called all your names yes?
274 for those who were absent actually yesterday we started working
275 what did we say about arrangements?
276 Will you?
277 what do we say?
278 what do you mean make arrangements arrange?
S: 279 organise something for somebody for [+ + +]
T: 280 organise something
S: 281 to make programmes or do something
T: 282 progRAMME
S: 283 yes
T:

- 284 also put things in order ha?
 285 Or to make plans for something ha?
 286 Arrange
- S:
 287 arrange
- T:
 288 arrange to do something
 289 arrange for somebody to do something
 290 arrange something with someone else right?
 291 also we talked about arrange marriages right?
- S:
 292 going to and will
- T:
 293 going to and will
 294 do you use will exactly for making arrangements?
- S:
 295 [+ + +]
- T:
 296 we can use going to ha?
 297 Such as what?
- S:
 298 I'm going to go somewhere
- T:
 299 you gonna go somewhere?
 300 I'm going to go shopping
- S:
 301 I'm going shopping
- T:
 302 I'm going shopping ha?
- S:
 303 both of them are correct?
- T:
 304 both of them are correct
 305 yes that's it
 306 British people have a tendency to use err present continuous instead of saying going to go
 307 they reverse go and come when they're using going to all right?
 308 for go and for come they have the tendency to use present continuous
 309 now saying going to go
 310 say I'm doing shopping right?
 311 but it's not incorrect as a matter of fact to use I am going to go or I'm going to come
 312 they're correct
 313 err we also talk about future certainty
- 314 what about that?
 315 how do we express our ideas in future certainty?
- S:
 316 [+ + +]
- T:
 317 will ha?
 318 We use will
 319 and we also listened to a kind of dialogue
 320 a conversation between miss Apobe
 321 miss Apobe a secretary ha?
 322 And?
- S:
 323 a man
- T:
 324 how was this man ha?
 325 now today-
 326 do you please open your books on page 66
- S:
 327 is it correct that American people use the will and going to in the same positions
 328 and it is not err different for them err which they have some planning
 329 for example when you are err these err going to do something you can you make
 330 we are going to do this for err
 331 they might tell that we will do this and there is not difference for them
 332 is it correct?
- T:
 333 why not?
 334 You know it sounds like that
 335 as we discussed yesterday we use to be going to when we are [+ + +]
 336 I could remember we have already planned
 337 and we have arranged to do something in the future ha?
 338 For example when you go shopping I told you yesterday
 339 we did not?
 340 we discussed that
 341 for example we have have already decided what you're going to buy
 342 you have made a shopping list ha?
 343 So now if somebody asks you what you gonna do?

- 344 What are you doing?
 345 You say I'm going shopping
 346 I am going to buy a kilo of meat for example
 347 for example I'm going to buy two kilos of sugar a packet of cigarettes and lab lab lab
 348 so you've already decided
 349 you have written a note right?
 350 you have arranged to buy these things right?
 351 now for example if somebody asks you- yeah?
- S:
 352 I think err is going to be going to do something has background err
- T:
 353 yes what I said you have already decided ha?
 354 That's the background ha?
 355 On the other hand now have a shopping list in your hands
 356 you're going shopping right?
 357 and you're going to buy those written things
 358 now somebody you wife for example asks you we've run out of sugar
 359 we've run out of something else
 360 for example we are in need of some:
- S:
 361 salt
- T:
 362 some what?
- S:
 363 salt
- T:
 364 salt?
 365 alright probably salt
 366 would you get some salt for the house
 367 now that you are at it
 368 now that you are going shopping ha?
 369 So you say all right
 370 I'll get some salt too right?
 371 I'll buy some salt too
 372 I will
 373 why because you suddenly decide
 374 at the moment of speech you decide ha?
 375 You suddenly start err decide about something you're going to do in the future ha?
- 376 You would do actually in the future right?
 377 so you use will right?
 378 I will do that
 379 I will also buy that for you
 380 well for example she would ask you now that you're going out will you post this letter for me?
 381 Will you post this letter for me ha?
 382 This doesn't mean err actually decided before this doesn't mean arranged
 383 this doesn't mean actually [+ + +] ha?
 384 Some would say now that you are at it please do this
 385 you say all right
 386 I'll do that
 387 I'll do that too
 388 I'll post this for you
 389 I'll post your letter
 390 so we use will when
 391 what?
 392 when we haven't decided ha?
 393 We haven't already decided what we are going to do yah?
 394 Now open your books at page 66
 395 practice pair work
 396 imagine imagine [+ + +] and you need you need to meet your partner
 397 sometime over the weekend to discuss some work
 398 you understand?
- S:
 399 [+ + +]
- T:
 400 what do you mean?
 401 what do you mean?
- S:
 402 which one?
- T:
 403 what are you saying?
- S:
 404 imagine it's a Friday and I arrange a meeting
- T:
 405 aha so you want to?
- S:
 406 arrange a meeting
- T:
 407 you want to arrange a meeting

- 408 you want to discuss something that your partner ha? or probably your colleague or your classmate ha?
- 409 You have something to discuss with your partner ha?
- 410 over the weekend
- 411 well actually the weekend in Iran is what?
- SS:
412 Friday
- T:
413 we can say Thursdays and Fridays in general right?
- 414 so actually now we should suppose that it's Thursday or it's Wednesday ha?
- 415 Suppose it's Wednesday and you want to see your partner
- 416 you have some certain things to discuss with your partner or your classmate over the weekend
- 417 on Thursday at [+ + +] right?
- S:
418 you mean thiS: err why the it has over the weekend
- 419 because two weeks
- T:
420 yeah answered it
- S:
421 today it was Wednesday
- 422 Tuesday or Wednes- in the weekend?
- T:
423 actually we do not say in the weekend
- 424 the preposition for weekend is in British English
- 425 is at American English? (.) on
- S:
426 then could we use over because one day?
- T:
427 um actually the weekend is generally refer err generally refer to err the end of the week
- 428 in other countries generally two days
- 429 so we say we can say over the weekend ok?
- 430 now err first fill in your own diary right?
- 431 what times have you [+ + +] for the weekend ha?
- 432 The things you have already decided to do during the weekend over the weekend ha?
- 433 The thing is that you had in your mind before to do during the weekend ha?
- 434 Write them down ok?
- 435 and also decide when you are free
- 436 what free time you have over the weekend ha?
- 437 Now here it is written on Sunday but actually we are talking Thursday and Friday in Iran
- 438 Thursday and Friday so morning afternoon evening
- 439 fill in your own diary
- 440 the things you have already decided to do
- 441 do it on your own
(individual work)
- T:
442 have you made a list of what to do during the weekend yeah?
- 443 ok now when you're ready it means now ha?
- 444 Stop writing ha?
- 445 Stop writing
- 446 when you're ready discuss your plans together
- 447 I mean with your partner in pairs ha?
- 448 You go to work in pairs
- 449 you go to work in pairs
- 450 two by two right?
- 451 discuss with your partner and see whether it is possible to meet what?
- 452 Because you want to discuss something
- 453 you have to arrange the time to meet
- 454 and if it is possible arrange a time and a place to see each other right?
- 455 go on
- 456 be careful you're going to use what?
- SS:
457 going to do
- T:
458 why?
- SS:
459 it is planned for
- T:
460 because you have timed for ha?
(individual work continues)
- T:

461 ok guys (clapping hands)
462 let's [+ + +]
463 what about you?
464 can you do that?
S:
465 yes
T:
466 when did you decide to meet?
S:
467 Saturday afternoon
T:
468 Saturday afternoon
469 What time?
S:
470 half past twelve
T:
471 half past twelve
472 and where?
S:
473 near Mellat
T:
474 near Mellat Park?
475 Near Mellat Park or in Mellat Park?
S:
476 no near Mellat Park
T:
477 where exactly?
478 where do you mean by Mellat Park?
S:
479 after the big door
T:
480 the big door?
S1:
481 yes
S2:
482 they have taken in the fences
T:
483 what?
S:
484 they have taken the fences of the Mellat
T:
485 the fences? taken away fences?
S:
486 yes
T:
487 all right what about you?
S:
488 Friday morning
T:
489 Friday?

S:
490 Friday morning
T:
491 where?
S:
492 post office in Tajrish
T:
493 right what about you?
S:
494 obviously we didn't came to an arrangement about the place we are going to gather
T:
495 you didn't come up with any arrangements?
496 why not?
S:
497 we had arrangements
498 we talk about we talked about this problems at Phone
T:
499 aha you decided to(.) talk it over a phone?
S:
500 we cannot meet each other because we couldn't match our free time
T:
501 so(.) that was the problem
502 you're going to discuss?
S:
503 you have to use own phone
504 I don't have Phone
T:
505 suppose you have your own phone
506 what would happen?
S:
507 we most probably we are going to go to the tennis in Enghlab Friday morning
T:
508 together?
S:
509 yes
T:
510 when
S:
511 at- at nine
T:
512 [become a hobby ha?
S:
513 yes at 9

T:
571 where is going? Ha?
572 He's not?

S:
573 no

T:
574 he's not sure

S:
575 yes

T:
576 how could we show or how could he actually show that he was not sure where to go

SS:
577 might

T:
578 might ha?
579 Said might(.) we haven't decided yet
580 we might go to Greece or we might go to Italy right?
581 so repeat the sentences once together (repetition)

T:
582 now work in pairs
583 ask B the questions
584 and so B you haven't made up your mind Ha?
585 You are uncertain
586 you are not sure
587 so use the cues A B C D right?
588 together go on (pair work)

T:
589 fortnight
590 what does it mean?

SS:
591 two weeks

T:
592 in two weeks time
593 it's a British word
594 it means two weeks time
595 two weeks two weeks right?
596 14 days right?
597 now we're going to listen to your dialogues A

S1:
598 Are you going to travel?

S2:
599 I haven't decided yet
600 I might fly or I might go by car

T:
601 B

S1:
602 err in which place are you going to stay?

S2:
603 I haven't decided yet
604 I might go to Hotel or I might

T:
605 [hoTEL

S2:
606 hoTEL
607 and I might rent house

T:
608 ha?
609 WHERE are you going to stay?
610 where? ha?
611 where are you going to stay?
612 I might stay in a hotel or I might rent a house
613 I might rent a(.) house
614 err what about you guys C?

S:
615 [+ + +]

T:
616 what?

S:
617 [+ + +]

T:
618 how long are going to stay?

S:
619 I haven't we haven't decided yet

T:
620 [decided

S:
621 we might err we might stay for a week or we might stay for a fortnight

T:
622 we might stay for a fortnight
623 and: K?

S:
624 err when are you come back?

T:
625 when?

S:
626 I will come back

T:
627 are you going to come back or where(.) when are coming back ?

S:
628 where are you going to go?

T: 629 what do you say?
S: 630 when are you going to go?
T: 631 ha when are you going to go
632 when are you going?
633 Or for the other way round
634 coming back
635 when are going to come back or when
are you coming back
636 when are you coming back whatever
637 go on
S: 638 I am not sure
639 I might come in July or in
T: 640 [come back
S: 641 come back in July or err I might come
back August
T: 642 in August
643 E?
S: 644 who are going with you?
S: 645 err I am
S: 646 who are going in with you?
T: 647 no who are going to who are going
with?
648 who are you going with? Ha?
S: 649 [+ + +]
T: 650 who is going with you?
S: 651 yes
T: 652 who are you going with?
S: 653 I am at school with my friends or [+ +
+]
T: 654 thank you very much that's good
655 now [+ + +]
S: (reads out)
T: 656 the first sentence?
SS: 657 I'm having lunch
T: 658 [I'm having lunch with?
SS: 659 Bob
T: 660 with Bob today
661 the arrangement is in my diary
662 it means that in my diary planned for it
in my diary
663 I have arranged for it
664 so in the second sentence she's getting
married in the spring
665 a date has been fixed and a trip
perhaps booked ok
666 so(.) translate these sentences into
Farsi
667 what are going to do today?
SS: 668 emshab chekar mikoni? (What are you
doing tonight?)
T: 669 ok I'm having a meal with Alice
SS: 670 [+ + +]
T: 671 embashab ba Alice ghaza mikhoram
ha? (Tonight, I am eating dinner with
Alice)
S: 672 [+ + +]
T: 673 adventure
674 adventure is a noun ha?
675 and the adjective
676 adventurous(.) adventurous
677 and have you heard of
678 there are two actually novels for the
young adults
679 err written by: written by whom?
S: 680 Jull Vern
T: 681 no, but I'll give you the name
682 you will give the name of the author
683 the writer of the adventures of Hackle
Berry Fin
684 the adventures of Tom Sire
685 who is the writer?

686 You know the writer? Ha?
S:
687 forgot it
T:
688 forgot the name
689 anybody else?
S:
690 one of them is written by Charles Dickens
T:
691 no(.) the writer was an American
692 Mark Twain ha?
693 Mark twain was the writer of what?
694 the adventures of Hackle Berry Fin and the adventures of Tom Sire
695 the next word (.) heart-headed [repetition]
696 what does it mean?
S:
697 very (.) serious
T:
698 very serious
699 what else?
S:
700 genius
T:
701 genius
702 oh no it doesn't mean necessarily
703 it doesn't mean genius
704 no can't say genius
705 someone who is serious in his job ha?
706 err realistic and serious
707 somebody who is dealing actually with facts rather than emotions ha?
708 somebody who doesn't let err his emotions and internal feelings err control him while he is going to decide about important things
709 or while he is studying something ha?
710 scientists are generally heart-headed people ha?(.) yeah?
711 so she- at least at the word they are heart-headed people ha?
S:
712 serious and realistic?
T:
713 yeah?
714 serious and realistic
715 heart-headed (repetition)
T:
716 what part of speech is this word?
717 heart-headed
SS:
718 noun
T:
719 adjective or noun?
SS:
720 adjective
T:
721 so adjective heart-headed person
722 we said ha? heart-headed scientist heart-headed
723 examples?
724 Give me examples?
S:
725 adventurer
T:
726 adventurer huh
727 adventurers are not like heart-headed
S:
728 do we have hard-hearted? huh
T:
729 hard?
730 Huh I don't know
731 I haven't heard of that
732 stone-hearted huh all right
733 his girl- you are talking about his girl friend
SS:
734 huh huh huh
T:
735 huh
S:
736 everything is about his girl friend
T:
737 err during next session actually we're going to deal with your girl friends ha?
738 he has only one but you have many ha?
SS:
739 huh huh huh
S:
740 it might surprise you that I I am lying
T:
741 you lied
742 oh it doesn't matter huh
743 actually we need a subject to talk about
744 err now it doesn't matter whether it was imaginary or it was realistic ha?
745 who was a real character
746 it was unreal?

S:
747 yes real

SS:
748 huh huh huh

S:
749 better is everything around it

T:
750 ha?

S:
751 it's better everything around it

T:
752 it's better ah ah?

S:
753 it's better everything be around this subject

T:
754
[this subject?
755 You prefer this subject
756 ok the other word is summon (repetition)

T:
757 have you heard this word?
758 summon, it's a noun(.) and also a verb
759 anybody?
760 Any ideas?

S:
761 it's a special inviting

T:
762 um officially?

S:
763 officially

T:
764 [inviting someone to a conference to a meeting to:

S:
765 call someone

T:
766 to call somebody
767 ask him or ask her to come over to a meeting to a conference to a court of law right?
768 summon that's it
769 so summon is to officially order to come to a meeting to a court I mean to a court of law
770 or actually summon somebody to do something
771 also we can order somebody to do something also right?

772 err sometimes you are summoned to the court to the court of law

773 have you been who has recently been summoned to the court?

S:
774 I went to the court because of the Monkarat huh (anti-social behaviour)

T:
775 no you were not summoned from the-
776 you were not ordered or you were not asked to go to the court ha?

S:
777
[we were pushed to Monkarat

T:
778 they arrested you
779 all right now we are not talking about that err
780 summon someone to the court
781 to ge- get [+ + +] err visa maybe editors ha?

S:
782 the people who take part in Berlin conferences

T:
783
[the people who had taken part in Berlin conference
784 they were summoned to the court ha?
785 that's it
786 also you can summon a meeting
787 you can summon a conference
788 and ask me- people to come and organise a meeting or a conference or whatever fine
789 err also (.) any of you have seen people (.) some sort of people to gather round
790 to get together in a certain room at night
791 actually you turn off the lights
792 then they try to ask the ghosts huh

S:
793 [+ + +]

T:
794 ha?
795 all right the spirits actually
796 err to [+ + +] themselves to move objects (.) what?
797 What do you do?

SS:

798 summon [+ + +]
T: 799 [summon the spirits ha?
800 you can summon spirits
801 you can summon ghosts right?
802 all right we talked about the NASA
yesterday didn't we?
803 what did NASA stand for?
804 what does NASA stand for?
S: 805 National:
S: 806 Aeronautics and space national
T: 807 national?
808 Aeronautics and Space Administration
809 it's located in Iran?
SS: 810 yes huh in Tehran
T: 811 huh in?
SS: 812 United States
T: 813 [the United States
814 and do you work for NASA?
SS: 815 huh
T: 816 you know physics ha?
817 all right repeat this word diameter
(repetition)
T: 818 well suppose this is a circle
819 of course it's not exactly a good circle
but this is called actually what?
SS: 820 diameter
T: 821 diameter
822 this one ha
823 this is a diameter
824 err actually it's a li- it's a line which
connects two?
S: 825 two points
T: 826 two points on a circle
827 and it also passes?
SS: 828 from the centre

T: 829 right
S: 830 half of it is radius
T: 831 sorry?
832 Half of the radius
S: 833 half of diameter
T: 834 [half of diameter is a
radius right?
835 yes that's it
S: 836 what is the meaning of the err the line
837 this is the connected to two parts of the
circle and err we don't [+ + +]
T: 838
[it is [+ + +]
S: 839 tangent
T: 840 tangent?
S: 841 tangent
S: 842 Rajeh Beh Vatar miporsim (my
question is about hypotenuse)
T: 843 actually Vatar is Farsi
844 in English I suppose we call it
Hypotenuse
845 something like that
846 I am not sure but I can check it for you
(checking his dictionary)
847 it's not in here maybe
S: 848 it is not very important
T: 849 well I can find it here right now
850 if I cannot then I will do it for next
session
S: 851 we can find it mathematical patterns
T: 852 hypotenuse or something
853 is that? this no?
S: 854 for example we have a [+ + +]
T:

855 I am [+ + +] I have no knowledge of
math all right

S:
856 the half of the diameter is?

T:
857 radius

S:
858 rad-?

T:
859 radius
860 I'll write it for you (writes on the
board)
861 ok the next word is what?
862 Probably you know this word
863 spin (repetition)
864 right what does spin mean?

S:
865 move around err of err something
around of err itself around of err

S:
866 an imaginary line that some thing
rounds

T:
867 huh all these definitions are technical
yeah

S:
868
[no using [+ + +]

T:
869 yes first of all it's a?

S:
870 rotating [+ + +]
871 it's for example when we are talking
about the [+ + +]
872 when it rotates it err

T:
873 [itself

S:
874 it spins
875 spin yeah?

T:
876 yeah(.) something moving around
itself right?
877 spin is a?
878 verb ha?
879 spin so to turn round very quickly ha?
880 to spin
881 someone's head spinning ha?

S:
882 when do you drunk

T:

883 when you drink water ha?
884 when you're drunk your head gets
spinning
885 what else do we have here?

S:
886 excuse me what's the meaning of err
gigantic?

T:
887 gigantic repeat (repetition)
888 what does it mean?
889 gigantic

SS:
890 /huge/

T:
891 huge
892 very big
893 very huge
894 huge very big titanic
895 also titanic ha
896 also titanic ha?
897 titanic the name of that film you
watched
898 who is what?
899 The name also means
900 titanic also means?
901 gigantic very big huge

S:
902 giant is come from

T:
903 giant gigantic come from that word

S:
904 enthusiastic

T:
905 enthusiast ha?
906 enthusiast means?
907 enthusiast means?
908 we've have it before

S:
909 very interested about something

T:
910 yeah to be interested
911 to be attracted actually err

S:
912 [+ + +]

T:
913 to be interested in an activity or in
doing something
914 you're an actually enthusiast right err
915 to be: enthu- err well we have to
enthuse someone
916 as a verb enthuse

- 917 we have enthusiastic
 918 enthusiastic is an adjective
 919 if something is very enthusiastic makes you?
- S:
 920 enthusiase
- T:
 921 enthusiast all right
 922 you could be an enthusiast means a person who is very much indeed interested in doing something in studying something
 923 is called he is I don't know err for example he is a math enthusiast
 924 he loves mathematics
 925 he is interested in mathematics
 926 he is interested in mathematics
 927 he is an enthusiast right?
 928 enthusiastic is the adjective
 929 err means very interesting
 930 enthusiastic right?
 931 enthusiast interested
 932 enthusiastic interesting
- S:
 933 bent?
 934 Excuse me bent?
- T:
 935 bent?
 936 What is the meaning of bent?
 937 Bent as a verb?
 938 Bent bent bend
- S:
 939 [+ + +]
- T:
 940 ha?
 941 to bend something ha?
 942 to bend something you bend
 943 you bow like this
 944 you bend your?
 945 back
 946 the other word that we have is: what?
- S:
 947 [+ + +]
- T:
 948 sorry?
- S:
 949 non-astronauts
- T:
 950 non-astronauts
 951 the person who is not an astronaut
- 952 the person who is not an astronaut is called non-astronaut
- S:
 953 he is asking about astronaut
- T:
 954 astronaut?
- S:
 955 a person who go to moon
- T:
 956 the people who travel into space
 957 the scientist actually not ordinary people right
 958 the scientists who travel into the outer space right?
 959 in a space shuttle
 960 in a space craft right?
 961 they're called astronauts
 962 and they study what?
 963 the space the other planets the stars
 964 astronomy right?
 965 it's called not astrology
 966 astronomy right?
 967 they're called astronauts
 968 repeat (repetition)
 969 all right where was that?
 970 where was the word astronaut
- SS:
 971 the first paragraph
- T:
 972 now repeat this word lunar (repetition)
 973 what does it mean?
 974 lunar
- S:
 975 related to moon
- T:
 976 related to the moon
 977 yes [+ + +] lunar
 978 lunar what?
 979 Gravity ha?
 980 what's gravity?
 981 We go to the earth's gravity
 982 here too
 983 err the other that you may not know is module ha?
 984 do you know the meaning of module
 985 repeat (repetition)
 986 what does this mean?
 987 it's a noun
 988 lunar was an adjective ha?
- S:
 989 opposite of [mi:nor]

T: 990 module?
S: 991 yes
T: 992 minor you mean?
S: 993 minor
T: 994 oh major major is the opposite of minor
995 module what does it mean?
S: 996 module special part
997 we have this
T: 998 no
S: 999 specially for computer hard ware
1000 any part of it we called a module
T: 1001 yeah actually the separate components right? of a machine of a system
1002 they might be in a way called modules
1003 The reason we have a module here
1004 so in this text module is a part of a space craft
1005 is a part of a spaceship right?
1006 which can separate itself from the main body of the space craft
1007 from the main body of the spaceships to be used for other certain purposes in the space right?
1008 or to even join the space station out there right?
1009 it could be used for a: actually doing some space research
1010 anything like that
1011 it is called what module
1012 so it's part of the spaceship
1013 part of the spacecraft
1014 after it is launched into the space it can separate itself from the main body
1015 from the main part right?
1016 and that is used for other certain purposes
1017 it could be used for err for satellites ha?
1018 so(.) they are called modules right?

1019 err another meaning of module is one of the units of a course which could be studied separately
1020 in course of study right?
1021 a part of a course of stu- course of study which should be studied separately right? is called module [+ + +]
1022 and(.) fill this words little bit
1023 we have to move on a bit faster
1024 terrestrial (repetition)
1025 what is it terrestrial?
SS: 1026 /religion/
T: 1027 first of all it's an adjective ha?
1028 it is related to what?
S: 1029 [+ + +]
T: 1030 to the earth
1031 [+ + +] actually in Latin and also in French we have what?
1032 In French actually we say terr
1033 terr means the earth right?
1034 la ter means the earth
1035 also tre- refers t what?
1036 Tress- refers to earth terrestrial
1037 means anything which is related to? The earth
1038 terrestrial we have terrestrial broadcasting
1039 terrestrial broadcasting
1040 then you know broadcasting?
SS: 1041 yes
T: 1042 the programmes mean TV programmes
1043 radio programmes
1044 while the: actually broadcast err from the earth without using the satellites is called terrestrial broadcasting right?
1045 as an example we have terrestrial broadcasting or terrestrial channels
1046 opposite of satellite channels ha?
1047 opposite of satellite channels
1048 now terrestrial means anything that is connected to the earth
1049 opposite of terrestrial is what?
1050 Non-terrestrial

1051 non-terrestrial anything which is not actually related to the earth
1052 it's related to the space
1053 it's related to any other object or planet outside of the earth
1054 outside of the actually the atmosphere of the earth right?
1055 in the space non-terrestrial ha? (repetition)
T:
1056 well actually non-terrestrial would mean celestial
1057 right(.) heavenly
1058 so it's the opposite of what? non-terrestrial
1059 err yes?
S:
1060 does it mean exactly the non-terrestrial?
T:
1061 which non-terrestrial?
S:
1062 terrestrial
T:
1063 well it's- one of the-
1064 did I tell you about this or not?
1065 Err synonyms are not exactly the same
1066 there are some certain differences between them
1067 celestial means heavenly
1068 heavenly means related to the skies
1069 to the outer space
1070 it's called celestial
1071 you have celestial objects right?
1072 now(.) you know gravity don't you?
1073 repeat (repetition)
1074 what does it mean?
S:
1075 the force that attracts everything to the centre of the earth
T:
1076 that's it
1077 who discovered gravity force for the first time?
S:
1078 Newton
T:
1079 Newton
1080 does only earth have gravity?
SS:
1081 no
T:
1082 so what?
S:
1083 everything has gravity
T:
1084 everything?
S:
1085 everything
T:
1086 everything huh you know shall-
1087 for example the moon also has its own gravity
1088 but its gravity in comparison to that of the earth is?
S:
1089 less than the earth
T:
1090 very tiny
1091 very small ha?
1092 the next word
1093 repeat deteriorate (repetition)
1094 what does it mean?
S:
1095 destroy
T:
1096 so become worse ha?
1097 to become worse ha?
1098 bad worse
1099 to become worse
1100 to develop into a bad [+++] situation right?
1101 it's to deteriorate things
1102 deteriorated(.) things became worse ha?
1103 err the economic situation deteriorated after the revolution ha?
1104 the Iranian economy deteriorated ha?
1105 deteriorated
1106 it's a?
1107 it's a?
1108 what part of speech?
S:
1109 word
T:
1110 it's a word
1111 of course it's a word
1112 so we say deteriorated -ed ha?
1113 but what's the opposite of deteriorate?
1114 So to become better

1115 to become good better
S:
1116 [+ + +]
T:
1117 err develop have the sense of that
1118 but we could say ameliorate
1119 ameliorate
1120 now repeat this word colony
1121 it's a?
1122 what is it?
1123 what part of speech is it?
SS:
1124 it's a noun
T:
1125 so what do we mean?
1126 colony?
S:
1127 immigrates
T:
1128 no
S:
1129 large amount of germs
T:
1130 sort of means ha?
S:
1131 a group of people that come in a
place
1132 in a certain place
T:
1133 listen now one meaning of colony is a
country
1134 is a piece of land
1135 [+ + +] but actually it's the country
itself
1136 err it's the country that is under the
political control of more powerful
countries of other countries ha?
1137 for example India for years it was a
colony
1138 colony of?
1139 The UK
1140 England ha?
1141 colony any of- many of colonies in
the whole of the world ha?
1142 specially during the
S: [+ + +]
T:
1143 ha?
S:
1144 Portugal had many colonies

1145 Portugal?
1146 Portugal had colonies
1147 well colony (repetition)
1148 in this sense ha?
1149 in this sense a country is a colony
1150 it's under the influence of another
country
1151 it's controlled by another country
1152 in this sense we have what?
1153 Colonisation ha?
1154 colonisation (repetition)
1155 all right to colonise ha?
1156 but now here has it this meaning?
S:
1157 no
T:
1158 no what's meaning here?
1159 listen another meaning colony
1160 a group of people who live in a
colony

T6 (3rd Session)

T: 1 okay, ah for this special task activity at the beginning I will recommend not to write down anything on these handouts ok!
2 because they are going to be collected again
3 don't write anything on this
4 this is an activity for a short time
5 do this and then [+ + +]
6 so please do not write on these handouts

S: 7 we must do this

T: 8 on piece of on a separate piece of paper all right

S: 9 [+ + +]

T: 10 don't you like it

S: 11 [+ + +]

T: 12 no?

S: 13 very hot

T: 14 is very hot!
15 Don't you think you're overdressed?

S: 16 no

T: 17 okay have you ever been to a foreign country?
18 Yes!
19 which country?

S: 20 [+ + +]

T: 21 oh you have been in a foreign country good
22 have you ever been to England?
23 No
24 what what do you usually need to take with yourself when you go to a foreign country?
25 what are the things that are necessary to take?

S: 26 passport visa

T: 27 ah passport!

S: 28 [+ + +]

T: 29 look at the items in the box in the first box page two
30 which ones, usually [+ + +] of that country?
31 Which ones are necessary?

S: 32 passport

T: 33 passport

S: 34 a return airline ticket

T: 35 a return ticket
36 is it necessary?

S: 37 a map of Iran

T: 38 a map of that country

SS: 39 tourist visa

T: 40 err a tourist visa
41 any kind of visa

SS: 42 /books//a map of Iran/

T: 43 a map of the country that you are going to yes!
44 Err what else?
45 An umbrella?

S: 46 a return airline

T: 47 sorry?

S: 48 a return airline ticket

T: 49 return airline ticket is necessary!

S: 50 a credit card

T: 51 credit card!

S:
52 it's so safe

T:
53 um

S:
54 it is not necessary

T:
55 it is not necessary
56 the other ones?

S:
57 [+ + +]

T:
58 which ones do you

SS:
59 [+ + +]

T:
60 which ones do you think is good to
take with (.) with yourselves?

S:
61 credit card

T:
62 credit card!

S:
63 yes

S:
64 tapes and CDs

T:
65 tapes and CDs!

S:
66 life is music

T:
67 life is music ha
68 what happened to your court?

S:
69 he conceded

T:
70 oh you are exonerated!

S:
71 yes

T:
72 ok!
73 man likes to make crime

S:
74 if God wants

T:
75 okay God willing
76 you say God willing

S:
77 will

T:
78 God willing

S:
79 willing?

T:
80 yes

S:
81 [+ + +] makes crime forbidding?

T:
82 not forbidden

S:
83 forbidden?

T:
84 okay, err well let's go to this part
step one

85 a friend of yours from the UK is
planning a short vacation in Iran

86 as he is a UK citizen he will have to
deal with immigration and customs
when he enters Iran

87 he doesn't have much room to pack
a lot of things because he's planning
to travel err with just a: bag pack

88 here are the things he's thinking of
taking with him

89 you know bag pack?

SS:
90 /yes/

T:
91 some kind of bag you carry on your
back

92 now okay I would like you to work
in pairs and think which ones err he
is advised to take with him ok!

93 two by two please
(pair work)

S:
94 we must write it?

T:
95 no sorry you are not allowed to mark
on this book

96 on separate piece of paper you can
write

S:
97 [+ + +]

T:
98 yes you can write them and also talk
with your friend

S:
99 talk it better or write it?

T: 100 doesn't matter if you don't want to forget err to not to forget
(pair work)

T: 101 okay now you noticed that some of these items are necessary yes! And obligatory
102 some of them are prohibited by law
103 according to Iranian laws you cannot bring them to the country yes!
104 But some of things you think that it is a good idea to bring
105 about the others you think it's okay to bring these but it isn't really necessary
106 err go to the next table
107 you can see four different categories
108 see!
109 I would like you to discuss them and say which items goes into which category
110 which one of these items goes into which of these categories
111 go ahead two by two
(pair work)

S: 112 we must write these or not necessary?

T: 113 err sorry not to forget the items I would like you to write the results down on a piece of paper
114 not on these handout sheets
(pair work continued)

T: 115 okay now let's err let's talk about them one by one
116 a passport which category?

S: 117 /first//one/

T: 118 the first one
119 what is your sentence exactly
120 you must!

SS: 121 /you must take a passport/

T: 122 you must take a passport into Iran
123 agree?

S: 124 you must England [+ + +]

T: 125 huh we are talking about Iran
126 so why don't you ag- why do you disagree with this

S: 127 I agree with this

T: 128 you agree with this
129 but you objected ok!
130 err about a surf board?

SS: 131 /not necessary/

T: 132 surf board for surfing on the water in the sea

S: 133 sailing

T: 134 to do surfing

S: 135 it isn't necessary

T: 136 which category?

SS: 137 /four/

T: 138 um you don't!
139 you don't have to!

SS: 140 [+ + +]

T: 141 take a surf board

S: 142 with yourself

T: 143 yes what about fresh fruit?

SS: 144 [+ + +]

T: 145 is it?

S: 146 yes

T: 147 is it allowed by law?

S: 148 some countries

T:

149 [no we are talking about
Iran
S:
150 tapes and CDs
T:
151 no sorry we are talking about fresh
fruits
S:
152 it is prohibited by law
153 fruit and trees
T:
154 um it is prohibited?
S:
155 yes
T:
156 so which category does it go to?
SS:
157 /four//two/
T:
158 it is two
159 you must not! Yes!
160 You must not take fresh fruit into
Iran
SS:
161
[fresh fruit into Iran
T:
162 what about an international drivers'
license?
S:
163 four
S:
164 two
T:
165 international drivers' license
SS:
166
[/three//three/it's a good idea/
T:
167 what is your sentence exactly
S:
168 you can take
T:
169 [you should take this or
you should take an international
driving license with you
170 what about books about Iran?
S:

171 [should
show obligation I think
T:
172 I will talk about that
173 should it means it is a good idea
174 just suggestion and mild obligation
175 err books about Iran?
SS:
176 /three/
T:
177 again you should TAKE!
178 you should take!
S:
179 but four
SS:
180 [+ + +]
T:
181 so which category does it belong to?
SS:
182
[/four//four/
T:
183 four!
184 You don't have to take?
SS:
185 /no/
S:
186 you don't have if you like
187 you can do if you don't like
188 it's don't have
T:
189 is it a good idea?
SS:
190 /yes it's a good idea/
S:
191 books about Iran is we have lots of
books about Iran
192 not a necessary
193 I think maps or anything we don't
need
T:
194 sorry number two is
S:
195 [+ + +]
T:
196 sorry category three says it is a good
idea to bring this
SS:
197 [+ + +]

S: 198 but there is one [+ + +]

S: 199 [study this in our house and err after that we have to go to Iran
200 for example we have [+ + +]
201 Iran has a mountains has a lot of [+ + +]

SS: 202 /about ancient/

T: 203 besides there are lots of books about Iran available here in Iran
204 why was he take it to Iran?

S: 205 it's a good idea

T: 206 it's a good idea

SS: 207 it's not necessary

S: 208 [+ + +]

T: 209 so you believe that goes to category three

S: 210 we have good books in Farsi in Persian but we don't have books in English
211 err this [+ + +] English and he he doesn't know anything about book in Persian

T: 212 so let's put it in the third category
213 do you agree?

S: 214 yes

T: 215 you should take books

S: 216 [we can take it in the third category
217 and I think in the fourth category

T: 218 both of them
219 okay what about a return airline ticket?

S: 220 I think it is necessary

S: 221 four

T: 222 necessary why?

S: 223 you can buy your ticket in Iran

S: 224 no

S: 225 three

T: 226 you don't have to?

S: 227 it depends

S: 228 because a tourist is limited for us
229 we cannot be in Iran for always for every time we want

T: 230 oh yes it is for a limited period of time?

S: 231 yes

T: 232 so you believe that it must go to which category?

S: 233 three

S: 234 first

T: 235 oh first you must take this with you!
236 a return airline ticket!
237 Without that you can enter Iran yes?

S: 238 yes

T: 239 so you can buy it here

S: 240 you can find here

S: 241 but for coming into Iran it is not necessary

T: 242 it is not necessary

S: 243 [+ + +]

T:

244 do you agree to put it in the third category?
S: 245 yes
S: 246 no
T: 247 yes or not?
SS: 248 /yes//no/
T: 249 the first one is necessary and obligatory
SS: 250 [+ + +]
T: 251 let me ask you this
252 suppose that you have not got a return ticket in your hands with yourself don't they allow you to enter Iran?
S: 253 yes they don't allow you into Iran
T: 254 who said this?
S: 255 if you have a tourist visa you have to have a
T: 256
[return ticket as well
SS: 257 yes
S: 258 if you have a tourist visa
T: 259 oh really?
SS: 260 yes
T: 261 so we must put it in the first one if if you [+ + +]
SS: 262 yes
T: 263 so you must put it in this
S: 264 by law or by law
T:

265 by law huh
SS: 266 huh
T: 267 you must take a return airline ticket with you
268 what about a map of Iran?
SS: 269 /three//a good idea/
T: 270 it's a good idea
271 what is your sentence exactly?
SS: 272 you should take the map of Iran with you
T: 273
[you should take a map of Iran with you
274 err a credit card
275 a laptop computer?
SS: 276 /two//forbidden/four/
T: 277 is it forbidden?
S: 278 no it depends
T: 279 it depends on what?
S: 280 it depends on the use of this
281 if you had used before
T: 282 [if it is second hand
S: 283 second hand you can enter it to Iran
284 but no for example you take it from the [+ + +] for selling
285 no this forbidden
T: 286 yes, of course it's for personal use
287 do you know [+ + +]
S: 288 [+ + +]
S: 289 number four
T: 290 number four!

S: 291 they don't believe us

T: 292 you don't have to take this?

S: 293 [+ + +]

T: 294 I I believe that
295 what's the necessity of a laptop here?

SS: 296 /it's not necessary/

T: 297 I don't think that it is so much helpful
298 you can send it to the last category part four
299 you don't have to take a laptop computer
300 next one a credit card?

S: 301 three

S: 302 you don't have to

S: 303 we can't buy anything

T: 304 credit card!
305 if you bring it here it's will of no use just limited [+ + +] accepted

S: 306 [+ + +]

T: 307 yes you can can send it to the fourth one
308 you don't have to take a credit card
309 what about the tourist visa?

SS: 310 /it is necessary/

T: 311 you say you?
312 you?

S: 313 first

T: 314 must you can say

SS: 315 [+ + +]

T: 316 you can say you must take a tourist visa with you
317 or you have to take a tourist visa with you
318 photographs of his hometown?

SS: 319 /four//it is not necessary/

T: 320 of course it depends on the photos

SS: 321 huh huh huh

S: 322 yes of course

T: 323 sometimes it is part two yes!
324 but usually it is part four
325 it goes to the last one
326 you don't have to take!
327 photographs of your hometown yes!

SS: (no response)

T: 328 next one tapes and CDs?

SS: 329 /four/

T: 330 it is it is forbidden yeah!

S: 331 yeah

S: 332 no personality [+ + +]

T: 333 legally they are allowed?

S: 334 [+ + +]

T: 335 they are ethically they are allowed

S: 336 [it depends we can hide them

T: 337 [yes let's ask the judge over here

SS: 338 huh huh huh

T: 339 sorry is it legal or not?

S: 340 yes it's prohibited

T: 341 it is prohibited by law really?
 342 so the judge is

S: 343 [+ + +]

T: 344 [talking talking law
 is here

S: 345 the mouth of law

S: 346 you must pay it the fine

T: 347 oh you said if you pay you can bring
 it?

S: 348 yes

T: 349 really so it is not prohibited

S: 350 everything is related to money

T: 351 they don't take it away from you

S: 352 everything dependent to money

S: 353 depends on the [+ + +] for CD

T: 354 [contents [oh really

S: 355 for example about the sexual for
 example sexual [+ + +]

T: 356 it is forbidden yes
 357 the ones that are intervene the rules
 they cannot be taken here
 358 so I think err one wants to bring
 tapes and CDs here he must put it
 under the (.) the second category
 359 do you agree?

S: 360 no

T: 361 what is it?
 362 you?

S: 363 you must not

T: 364 [you must not?

SS: 365 /take tapes and CDs/
 T: 366 [tapes and CDs
 or you can say
 367 you?

S: 368 have to

T: 369 can not or you can't take tapes and
 CDs into Iran
 370 err the other one is an umbrella
 371 which category?

SS: 372 /four/
 T: 373 four!
 374 Three

S: 375 three

T: 376 umbrella to Iran!

S: 377 depends on the season

S: 378 in winter in Iran we need umbrella

T: 379 how many days a year you need
 umbrella in this country?
 380 even in winter you don't have

S: 381 which part of Iran!

S: 382 yes it depends on which part of Iran

S: 383 Tehran

T: 384 in the middle of the desert

SS: 385 huh

S: 386 perhaps he needs that

T: 387 really?

S: 388 it's desert

T: 389 do you carry one with yourself?

390 that is why they arrest you in the street
391 you know that?
S:
392 those for [+ + +]
393 I think it's useful
T:
394 umbrella the dark ones as shades yes!
395 Shadows
S:
396 shadows makes it [+ + +]
T:
397 [okay but I think it is better to put it in the!
S:
398 number four
T:
399 number four!
S:
400 I think it is
T:
401 you can say you don't have to?
402 you don't have to take an umbrella
SS:
403 [have to take an umbrella
T:
404 and?
405 and there is another structure you can use here
406 what is it?
407 you needn't take an umbrella yes!
Err
S:
408 sorry?
409 You needn't?
T:
410 you needn't
S:
411 [don't need or needn't?
T:
412 sorry needn't is a modal verb
413 it is not a main verb
414 this is different from that need you know
415 Need can be used in two different ways

416 one as a modal verb and the one as a main verb
417 here it is a modal verb
418 so you say?
419 you?
S:
420 [needn't
T:
421 err needn't take an umbrella with you
422 hiking boots?
SS:
423 /four/
T:
424 three
SS:
425 /four//why three?/
T:
426 why four?
S:
427 the tourist doesn't come here for walking
428 he's coming absolutely I think for [+ + +] not for walking
T:
429 ah it is not for travelling in nature
430 and whatever yeah which category do you agree it goes in?
SS:
431 /four/
S:
432 three I think
T:
433 yes of course
434 usually countries run a kind of cultural err tour yeah!
435 so usually they are visiting the sightseeing places
436 I agree with you at this
437 the last category?
438 You don't have to take hiking boots with you
439 of course you know that
440 for some of them there isn't a neat answer
441 now can you add two items to each one of these categories
442 two more items and write them err in the from of a complete sentence
443 can you do it?

444 you've got three minutes to do it
445 two by two about two other items
(pair work)

T:
446 okay, well let see for the first one
447 for the first category?

S:
448 you must take money with you

T:
449 ah you must: have enough money
with you
450 Iranian currency?

SS:
451 [+ + +]

T:
452 of course they accept dollar in Iran

SS:
453 /yeah//yes//huh/

T:
454 you can pay in dollars

S:
455 you can bring with yourself dollars
or other

T:
456 but no
457 what is a necessity?

S:
458 you must take enough money

T:
459 you must take enough Iranian
currency okay
460 another one?

S:
461 information about people of Iran

T:
462
[sorry complete sentence please]

S:
463 err

T:
464 you?

S:
465 you must know some information
about people of Iran for example

T:
466
[is it a must?]

SS:
467 /no/

T:
468 is it necessity?

S:
469 no

S:
470 yes for example about err

T:
471 [without
that they don't let you enter Iran?
Ha?

SS:
472 [no response]

T:
473 another one?

T:
474 you must know the international err

T:
475
[sorry you please?]

S:
476 women must take

T:
477 women?

S:
478 must take a scarf with her

T:
479 [must take
Islamic wearing with her
480 ladies must take Islamic wearing
with them
481 another one
482 the judge?]

S:
483 I haven't

SS:
484 huh

T:
485 no other categories as well
486 two three four

S:
487 yes, you must not take wine with
you

T:
488 ah you mustn't take alcoholic drinks
with you yes good

S:
489 and jewels

T:
490 jewels!

S: 491 gold rings
T: 492 the personal ones?
S: 493 no no
T: 494 we are talking about business
495 we talk about the things with
yourself
496 okay what else?
497 You?
S: 498 you don't have to take warmer
clothes
T: 499 you don't have to take warm clothes
with you!
S: 500 perfume
T: 501 depends on the season of course
S: 502 perfume
T: 503 perfume!
S: 504 good idea perfume
T: 505 is it good or- is it necessary or not?
S: 506 it is not necessary
T: 507 so what do you say?
508 you don't have to?
S: 509 [you must not take
this
T: 510
[sorry when you say you must not
when you say you mustn't it is a
prohibition
511 it is a negative obligation you see!
512 So you cannot say [+ + +]
513 you can say you don't have to yes!
514 you mean that you don't have to
bring perfumes with you because
they are available here yes!

S: 515 yes
T: 516 okay you please?
S: 517 you don't have to take certification
T: 518 you don't have to have what?
519 What is certification?
S: 520 you don't have to certification
T: 521 what is it?
522 what do you mean?
S: 523 iden-
T: 524 identification?
S: 525 yes
T: 526 you have to have identification with
your visa
SS: 527
[/ID card/
T: 528 sorry passport is a kind of
identification
529 but if you mean your ID card is
different
530 you don't have to
531 you- you don't have to have your ID
card
532 you mean this one?
S: 533 yes
T: 534 this one is not necessary because it is
not [+ + +]
535 okay you please?
S: 536 you should take a Handicam with
you
T: 537 you should take a Handicam, yes
538 you can say you should take a
Handicam with you because there is
good beautiful sightseeing

S: 539 err you should be able to record yes
 T: 540 you must not take weapons with you
 SS: 541 you must not huh
 T: 542 huh huh
 S: 543 you must not take weapons!
 T: 544 Bazooka
 S: 545 you must not have weapons with you
 T: 546 bilingual dictionary
 S: 547 you should have a bilingual dictionary with you yes
 T: 548 some books with you
 S: 549 sorry?
 T: 550 you must not have some books like
 S: 551
 T: [you: can't take illegal books here
 S: 552 you don't have to take the pet
 T: 553 I don't know about that
 S: 554 pet
 T: 555 I know I know
 S: 556 is it allowed?
 T: 557 no
 S: 558 what was your sentence?
 T: 559 we don't have to take
 S: 560 [ha we don't have to take our pets
 T: 561 you can
 S: 562 no we can't but we don't have to take it
 T: 563 sometimes it is problematic
 S: 564 the actually isn't there any limitations or restrictions to take animals here
 T: 565 no you can't take here cows
 S: 566 elephants for example
 T: 567 huh huh huh
 S: 568 zebra
 T: 569 okay now listen
 S: 570 turn to page three
 T: 571 look at this table
 S: 572 you can see the different categories here A B and C
 T: 573 must have to have got to of course [+ + +]
 S: 574 err these show us?
 T: 575 obligation yes!
 S: 576 These two structures are used for obligation to express obligation
 T: 577 we call this strong obligation or a necessity
 S: 578 we have mild obligation or suggestion
 T: 579 there is no difference between must and have to?
 S: 580 yes there is
 T: 581 you know most of the grammarians believe they are the same
 S: 582 but some of them believe that when you are using must it is a kind of obligation which arises from inside
 T: 583 you you decide to do something
 S: 584 but have to has got some external causes you know?
 T: 585 And you can use must only for present
 S: 586 but you use have or have got to for other tenses as well
 T: 587 past future
 S: 588 for mild obligation what structure?

SS: 589 /should/
T: 590 for prohibition?
S: 591 mustn't
T: 592 you have these structures mustn't
593 can we say don't have to for this one?
S: 594 not
T: 595 no we can't yes
596 the other one is for permission
S: 597 can
T: 598 what did you say?
S: 599 can
T: 600 permission no you can say can
601 you can for example [+ + +]
602 and there is another one no obligation
S: 603 don't have to
T: 604 don't have to and?
605 needn't this is absence of obligation or no obligation
606 this is negative obligation or prohibition
607 and can is used for [+ + +]
608 now let's go to the next part
609 it is on the board
610 you can write it because we are short of time
611 let's go to the next part
612 exercise one look back at the sentences you wrote in [+ + +] of the opening task
613 if you use must have to should can't mustn't and don't have to
614 if you did check to see that you used them correctly
615 actually we did this exercise
616 err now, let's go to exercise
617 the next exercise
618 work with a partner and decide which of the following are necessary and obligatory to do if you want to get a drivers' license in Iran
619 okay to get a drivers' license in Iran err what do we have to do?
620 two by two (pair work)
T: 621 okay let's talk together about the first item
622 you please?
S: 623 first know how to drive
T: 624 um yes it is necessary yeah?
SS: 625 /yes/
T: 626 okay what is your sentence?
S: 627 we must know how to drive
T: 628 um we have to know how to drive
629 you?
630 practice before the test?
S: 631 we must practice before the test
S: 632 you should
T: 633 for practice before the test
S: 634 [you should
T: 635 this one actually is it necessary and obligatory?
SS: 636 /yes//necessary/you should practice/
T: 637 practice before the test is advised yes!
S: 638 if we don't practice we won't accept
639 the examination is very difficult
T: 640 no the officer will ask you how you've done!

641 have you practised!
 642 And if you say no you will fail
 643 so it's better to say you should
 practice before the test
 644 take a test
 645 next one please?
 SS:
 646 /yes//you must/
 T:
 647 yes you have to! Take an eye test
 648 take a written test
 649 you?
 S:
 650 you must take a written test
 T:
 651 yes you've got to take a written test
 652 next one have a medical
 examination?
 S:
 653 yes we have: we have must a
 medical examination
 T:
 654 which medical examination?
 SS:
 655 /yes//yes/
 T:
 656 medical examination?
 SS:
 657 /yes/
 S:
 658 if you are sick you must say to
 T:
 659 is there legally a medical
 examination?
 S:
 660 this is a law
 T:
 661 let's ask the judge
 662 oh dear judge is there any medical
 examination for getting a driving
 license?
 S:
 663 yes
 T:
 664 medical examination!
 665 Not for eyes
 S:
 666 eyes
 T:

667 so there is no that that is the one [+ +
 +]
 SS:
 668 /huh/
 T:
 669 you don't have to have a medical
 examination
 670 what about the next one?
 671 You please?
 672 Have a passport or birth certificate
 as ID
 S:
 673 you have to have a passport or birth
 certificate
 T:
 674 yes you've got to have a passport or
 birth certificate as ID
 675 okay err next one?
 676 You please?
 S:
 677 we must a driving test
 T:
 678 yes you've got to pass a driving test
 679 it is-
 S:
 680 [we must say you should
 T:
 681 for this one?
 S:
 682 yes, we don't if don't pass we fail
 T:
 683 no because he wants to get a drivers'
 licence not
 684 just waste his time
 685 he wants to get A DRIVER'S
 LICENSE
 686 next one?
 S:
 687 have a high school diploma
 688 you don't have
 T:
 689 yes you needn't have a high school
 diploma
 690 or you don't have to have a high
 school diploma
 691 next one own a car?
 S:
 692 no you don't have to have
 T:

693 [you don't
have to own a car
694 you know that in Britain you can
actually take the test in your car
695 you know that?
SS:
696 [+ + +]
T:
697 because you are more familiar with
your car
S:
698 with Paykan you cannot ride in Iran
when you want to
T:
699
[what about the last one?
700 You please?
S:
701 no you needn't have an international
drivers' license
T:
702 err if you were a foreigner is it
necessary or not?
SS:
703 /no//not necessary/
T:
704 okay, it is not necessary
705 so you don't have to have an
international drivers' license
706 okay do you know about UK?
707 Have you got information on that?
SS:
708 /no/
T:
709 I would like you at least to guess in
groups of three to add up, your
information
S:
710 [+ + +]
T:
711 about getting a drivers' license in the
UK what do you think?
712 I will answer you later
(pair work)
T:
713 okay listen
714 first of all when you want a
provisional drivers' license in
Britain
715 in UK provisional drivers' license is
not is err a kind of driving license
that is just for the period of time that
you are learning
716 you must have it
717 and to: you must apply for it
718 then you will have eye sight check
by a tester
719 and then you have to pay the charges
for both exams
720 and then you must take the test
721 and while you're taking the test you
can use your own car
722 and then you're allowed to and
you're permitted to drive
723 to have your drivers' license
provisional drivers' license means
not for ever
724 just for present time okay
725 and if you want to say this you say
726 you! have to apply for a provisional
drivers' license
SS:
727
[have to apply for a provisional
drivers' license
S:
728 you have to
T:
729 [you have to have
S:
730 check you eye sight
T:
731 [your eye sight
check by the tester then
S:
732 you have to pay the fines
T:
733 [you have to
pay
S:
734
[the fines
T:
735 the fixed charge for both tests
736 then you have to take the?
S:
737 [driving test
T:
738 test and you can use your own car

739 what do you say?
740 you
SS:
741 [you should
T:
742 you can take the test in your own car
743 and then you get the drivers' license
744 so you can?
S:
745 drive
T:
746 drive and take lessons in driving
using your provisional drivers'
license
747 any questions? No?
S:
748 driving office?
749 In foreign countries
T:
750 [driving centre
751 okay thank you
752 let me have your papers back
T:
753 okay ah now we've got good news
for you today
S:
754 good news
T:
755 yes you're going to have a quiz
S:
756 very good news

T7 (3rd Session)

- T:
1 you please
2 would you take the papers?
(distribute papers)
- T:
3 if you didn't write this homework
for the next class please, do it okay?
4 err close your books please okay?
5 take this
6 err there are two pieces of paper yes?
7 In front of you
8 at the beginning of this piece of
paper you can see there is an opening
task yes?
9 The beginning of the steps
10 look at step one and see what is
going to happen
11 a friend of yours from the UK, is
planning a short vacation in Iran
12 UK United?
- SS:
13 /kingdom/
- T:
14 kingdom
15 as he is a UK citizen he will have to
deal with yes?
16 Manage immigration and customs
17 immigration?
- SS:
18 [+++]
- T:
19 coming from one country to the other
country and live there forever
20 and customs?
21 an organisation to ask for taxes and
money yes? If you bring something
into the country, when he enters Iran
22 so when he comes to Iran he has two
problems
23 one problem is to go through the
immigration office
24 and the other problem is to go
through the?
- SS:
25 /custom/
- T:
26 [customs office yes?
27 And he doesn't have much room
28 here room means space yes?
- 29 He doesn't have much space to pack
a lot of things okay?
30 he cannot carry with him a lot of
things
31 because he is planning to travel with
just a bag pack
32 what did what does he have to
travel?
33 Just a?
- SS:
34 /bag pack/
- T:
35 bag pack
36 here are some of the things he's
thinking of taking with him
37 now these are possible things that he
may carry to Iran yes?
38 Let's see what they are
39 a passport, yes?
40 A surf board
41 who knows what a surf board is?
- S:
42 go on with this on the sea
- T:
43 hum on the!
- S:
44 waves
- T:
45 [waves okay?
46 so what is the verb?
47 The verb is surf okay?
48 to surf means to move on the water
yes?
49 Usually wave yes?
50 Wave of the sea
51 now for example go wind surfing
52 the sport is wind surfing
53 now, what is surf board?
54 surf board is a (.)is something like a
panel
55 a board for surfing
56 there's something under the feet
57 yes under the feet of that person
who is going to ride at the waves that
is called surf board
58 on television you can see yes?
59 Did you understand?
- S:
60 like snow board
- T:

61 like?
S:
62 snow board
T:
63 yes okay fresh fruit you know
64 an international drivers' license
65 books about Iran
66 a return airline ticket of course
67 a map of Iran
68 a laptop computer
69 laptop?
SS:
70 /like books/
T:
71 a small computer
72 yes you can put them on your feet
while you are in an aeroplane and
you can work with your computer
73 laptop small movable portable
computer
74 a credit card or
75 a credit card in other countries you
have a special card
76 when you go shopping or when you
go to buy anything you don't need to
pay money
77 you show the credit card and your
credit card will account for it yes?
78 Pay for it
79 a tourist visa
80 of course photographs of his
hometown yes
81 tapes and CDs
82 an umbrella and hiking boots
83 boots for hiking, okay?
84 these are the possible things that the
person may think necessary to bring
into another country
85 here it is Iran yes?
S:
86 sorry can we use a credit card for UK
in Iran?
T:
87 aha I mean I mean these are the
possible things
88 I just said possible yes? Okay?
89 now' we want to see
90 look at step two we want to see
which of them are necessary or not

91 use the boxes below to help him
organise the things he wants to take
to Iran
92 work with a partner and put them in
the boxes where you think they
belong
93 look at example number 1 box 1
94 box 1 those things which are
necessary and obligatory
95 what is obligatory?
S:
96 forced
T:
97 yes, you have to have them yes?
98 You are forced to have them
99 if not you will have problems
100 number 1 is the necessary items
101 you can't enter Iran, without this
102 you must take this with you okay?
103 so number one is necessary items
104 number 2 it's prohibited by law
105 what is prohibit?
S:
106 forbidden
T:
107 forbidden by law
108 against the law
109 it means law does not allow you, to
bring them into your country
110 you must not take this into Iran
111 number three it's a good idea to
bring this okay?
112 so number 2 is you should take with
this you should take this with you
okay?
113 it means number 2 is a kind of
suggestion yes?
114 A kind of ah suggestion for a person
to bring something into the country
115 and number four it's your [+++] to
bring this but it isn't really necessary
116 you don't have to take this, okay?
117 what is the difference between
number three and number four?
118 in number three it's a good idea to
bring this
119 in number four you don't need to
bring this
120 you can bring or?
121 You cannot

- 122 you can stop bringing it, okay?
 123 now you are students
 124 two by two for example you and you,
 you and you
 125 every two students will talk to
 themselves,
 126 talk to each other about these four
 items
 127 work with a partner and put them in
 the boxes where you think they
 belong
 128 have a piece of paper yes?
 129 And just ask your ques- ask your
 friend yes?
 130 Ask your friend that if it is necessary
 to have a kind of (.) this or not
 131 please, just talk to your friend and
 mention if it is necessary to have
 passport to have a surf board, and the
 other things or not
 132 you talk to each other okay?
 133 first talk
 134 please listen, first talk to each other
 okay?
 135 then I will ask you to write it down
 okay?
 136 now first talk yes?
 (pair work)
- T:
- 137 okay that's enough
 138 look at the board now
 139 look at the board and listen to step
 three
 140 can you and your partner add any
 other things to this list
 141 try to think of at least three more
 items and put them in the appropriate
 boxes okay?
 142 what do you do?
 143 You think of other things which may
 be necessary or may not be necessary
 yes?
 144 For example you may say for
 example as sports shoes or I don't
 know a kind of for example shirt or a
 kind of special cloth okay
 145 so think of those things which are
 necessary or may be not necessary
 and ask your partner if you can bring
 this to to Iran or not okay?
- 146 understand?
 147 Start now ask your friend
 (pair work)
- T:
- 148 yes listen please?
 149 You asked these items yes?
 150 you asked your friend if it is
 necessary to bring these items to
 your country or not
 151 and you also added some other items
 to brin- into Iran or not
 152 now go to step four
 153 with your partner write sentences
 about one or items in each box
 154 explain why you think they belong
 there okay?
 155 for example you write for example a
 passport you write it is necessary to
 bring the passport
 156 why?
 157 Because?
 158 Yes?
 159 Let's first have a summary over what
 you did, okay?
 160 I mean what you did up to now okay
 161 let's discuss a passport!
 162 If it belongs to number one number
 three or number four which one?
- SS:
- 163 /one/
- T:
- 164 a passport is as necessary as
 everything (.) which is vital yes?
 165 you know?
 166 Okay a surf board
 167 which number?
- SS:
- 168 /number 4/
- T:
- 169 number four yes?
 170 Okay what about fresh fruit?
- SS:
- 171 /number 4/
- T:
- 172 four yes
 173 who said number two?
- SS:
- 174 huh
- T:

175 for example you bring for example a box of bananas
176 they just ask you not to bring it to the country?
S:
177 because the other side [+++]
T:
178 okay wait
179 next one an international drivers' license?
SS:
180 /number three/
T:
181 number three
182 it's a [+++]
183 yes how about books about Iran?
SS:
184 /number three/
T:
185 number three again
186 it's a good idea
187 a return airline ticket?
SS:
188 /one//three/
T:
189 maybe you say number one
190 maybe you say number three
191 I think number three because you can just in Iran buy a ticket to go back yes?
192 A map of Iran?
SS:
193 number three
T:
194 again number three
195 a laptop computer?
SS:
196 /one/ three/
T:
197 number three or you may say number four okay?
198 how about a credit card?
SS:
199 /number four/
T:
200 it is exactly number?
SS:
201 four
T:
202 four yes number four
203 because number three there is no use of credit cards yes?
204 To bring to- err of course maybe you can use them in some special places and you have international transfer to other countries yes?
205 You can say number three too
206 also number four yes?
S:
207 excuse me instead of money that's necessary
T:
208 I know I know but in Iran the usage is low yes?
209 I said it is good but not so much used in Iran yes?
210 How about a tourist visa?
SS:
211 number one
T:
212 yes and a photograph of his hometown?
SS:
213 number four
T:
214 how about tapes and CDs?
SS:
215 /four//two/
T:
216 number?
S:
217 two
T:
218 tapes and CDs against the law um
219 some of them yes number two
220 but some of them is it number one?
SS:
221 huh huh huh
T:
222 umbrella?
SS:
223 /three/
T:
224 because Iran is not so much rainy
225 you can say number?
SS:
226 /four/
T:
227 or maybe number four yes?
228 How about hiking boots?

SS:
229 number four

T:
230 okay?
231 so you categorise them into these steps
232 how about other things you mentioned they are necessary
233 what other things are in number one?
234 In number one category what other things you think they are necessary?

SS:
235 /scarf//money/

T:
236 he says scarf for women
237 yes or no?

SS:
238 yes

T:
239 for example when a woman comes to Iran at the air port they stop her
240 and she should just call somebody to bring a special clothes for Iranians yes?
241 So special clothes for Iranians

SS:
242 money

T:
243 money yes of course money
244 what about-

S:
245 airline ticket

T:
246 he says he has in the bag

S:
247 for his going

T:
248 returning?

S:
249 no for going to Iran cities

T:
250 of course yes
251 what else?

S:
252 water

T:
253 water!

SS:
254 huh

T:
255 we can't find water in this country?
256 How about number two?
257 Part number two?
258 Prohibited by law

SS:
259 alcohol

T:
260 alcohol drinks and

S:
261 [opium

S:
262 bomb

T:
263 and special- bomb yes

S:
264 arms

T:
265 arms yes
266 missiles okay
267 number three it's a good idea to bring this
268 you should take this with you
269 which things?

SS:
270 /warm clothes/

T:
271 warm clothes

S:
272 glasses

T:
273 glasses
274 also?

S:
275 camera

T:
276 camera okay?

S:
277 [+++]

T:
278 and the others
279 and number four it's okay to bring this but it isn't really necessary
280 you don't have to take this with you

S:
281 /water//TV//car/

T:
282 you could say a lot of things
283 no no you can say lot of things but say those things which are appropriate for this sentence

284 you don't need to bring a for
example credit card was good in this
list

285 how about other things?

S:
286 calculator

T:
287 maybe calculator

288 you don't need to bring your?

S:
289 notebook

SS:
290 huh

T:
291 okay notebook and other things
okay?

292 now part four write sorry with your
partner

293 write sentences about one or two
items in this box explaining what you
think they belong there okay?

294 you ask your partner and your
partner write the things they think
they belong yes?

295 With your partner write sentences
about one or two items

296 sentences about one or two items in
these boxes

297 why do you think they belong there

298 just one or two

299 for example you just use four
example say passport

300 it is necessary to have a passport
because at the airport they stop you if
you don't have a passport okay

301 just write two sentences, okay?

302 just two items

303 understand?

S:
304 two items of err

T:
305 [of these parts yes?

306 These parts

307 why it is necessary or it is not
necessary to bring the?

SS:
308 [+++]

T:
309 yes

SS:

310 [+++]

T:
311 sorry look at look at my paper

312 there is there are different items here

313 you just choose one or two of them
and explain if it is necessary or not
necessary

314 understand?

S:
315 yes

T:
316 ask your friend and your friend
answers and you write okay?

317 and then vice versa
(pair work)

T:
318 sorry look at the board

319 look at the board

320 you categorise if these items in these
four categories

321 category one necessary things for
example passport and for example I
don't know err

SS:
322 tourist visa

T:
323 tourist visa and the others

324 for each one you have should write
two sentences

325 for example two for one two for two
two for three two for four

326 two sentences for each chart or for
each number okay?
(pair work)

T:
327 okay okay let's what sentences you
have written for example one of your
sentences?

S:
328 [+++]

T:
329 listen please sentence louder

S:
330 we need a visit card because we need
to make a journey in Iran

T:
331 we need a visiting card to-

S:
332 or a tourist visa

T:

333 a tourist visa for?
S:
334 for make a journey in Iran
T:
335 to make a journey!
S:
336 in Iran
T:
337 yes to take a trip to Iran you need a
visiting card
338 for visiting which places?
S:
339 for example Isfahan or err
T:
340 okay the other cities yes?
341 now you [+++] sentences you wrote?
S:
342 you must have a passport because
S:
343 you must go from the airline
T:
344 you must go to the airline
345 so you must have a passport
346 it is necessary to have a passport
347 you read one of your sentences?
S:
348 you don't have to take a credit card
to Iran because it's not useful in Iran
T:
349 yes it's not used so much in Iran yes?
350 You?
S:
351 you don't have to bring a laptop
computer because we have many
computers in Iran
T:
352 okay, it doesn't mean laptop
computers are unnecessary because
this is takes because it takes
353 and also you?
S:
354 tapes and CDs they are forbidden in
Iran's [+++]
T:
355 ha?
356 yes it is not necessary and it is
prohibited yes? to bring CDs and
tapes any CDs and tapes to Iran yes

357 okay go to the next page page three
modals necessity prohibition and
permission
358 and you know modal are those words
yes? like should might may
359 and these modals used for different
purposes
360 one of the purposes is necessity
361 something you [+++] necessary or
prohibition something is against the
law
362 the law wants to stop them action
363 or it is permitted permission
364 it is prescribed and suggested by a
person to another person
365 so these three categories are in the
following box
366 look at the box
367 look at the first example
368 you must have a passport
369 explanation look at exercise A B and
C sorry examples A B and C you
must have a passport
370 you have to have a passport
371 you have got to have a passport
372 these three examples are explained in
the chart in front
373 use must have to or have got to show
to show something is necessary and
obligatory
374 something that is strongly required
often by law
375 so these three words must have to
and have got to are for the first group
376 I mean the group of the things you
think are necessary yes?
377 Yes or no?
SS:
378 yes
T:
379 for example I must have a passport or
I have to have a passport I have got
to have a passport
380 the second part, you have you must
not or you mustn't bring fresh fruit
into Iran
381 you can not or can't bring fresh fruit
into Iran
382 use must not or mustn't or can't or
cannot to show something is

prohibited and absolutely not permitted often by law

383 so for the second box we use these words mustn't and can't

384 you mustn't bring CDs or you must can't bring CDs

385 part three you can bring a surf board

386 use can't to show that something is permitted

387 so can is used for permission yes?

388 And you should bring a credit card

389 use should to show something is a good idea yes?

390 So should is the next category

391 you don't have to bring the surf sports surf board

392 use do not or don't have to to show something is permitted but not necessary

393 you can do it if you want to but you are not required to do it yes?

394 So we have some categories yes?

395 The first one necessary have to have got to and must

396 number two prohibition or prohibited mustn't and can't

397 number three permission can

398 number four?

399 Number four?

SS:

400 /good idea/

T:

401 yes good idea should

402 and number five don't have to

403 permitted but not necessary okay? yes?

404 Now go to exercise one

405 look back at the sentences you write in step four of the opening task

406 do you remember?

407 you wrote some sentences yes?

408 go and refer them refer to them

409 did you use must have to have got to should can can't mustn't and don't have to in your sentences?

SS:

410 /yes/

T:

411 yes if you did check to see that you used them correctly okay?

412 for example again look at them to see if you wrote I have to do that or I must do that

413 if you didn't use them rewrite the sentences okay?

414 if you didn't use these words write the sentences again

415 look at the examples

416 he must have a valid passport

417 it is required by law okay?

418 so you should write he must have a valid passport or he has to have a valid passport

419 understand?

420 go back to your sentences and rewrite your sentences in the form of must have to and other words

421 start and check your sentences (pair work)

T:

422 you have to have passport to enter to Iran you please?

S:

423 you cannot bring the tape and CDs because [+++]

T:

424 they are not allowed

425 you please?

S:

426 you can have a passport to enter in Iran

T:

427 yes you please?

428 why did you say can?

429 you must have a passport yes?

430 You?

S:

431 you should bring a map of Iran

T:

432 yes should

433 you please?

S:

434 you can you can take a map of Iran because you can know about geography err

T:

435

[because it is better to know about the geography of Iran

436 you?

S:
437 err you mustn't have CDs or tapes
because some music in Iran is not
allowed

T:
438
[very good yes you mustn't have
CDs or tapes because some kinds of
music are not allowed yes? Okay?
439 you?

S:
440 you should you should carry a book
about Iran

T:
441 yes you?

S:
442 you don't have to bring a surf board
in Iran

T:
443 ha he doesn't have to he doesn't have
to bring a surf board to Iran
444 you please?

S:
445 you don't have to bring an umbrella
because Iran is not rainy

T:
446 Iran is not a rainy country yes
447 you please?

S:
448 you must not bring fresh fruit into
Iran because we have enough fruit in
Iran

T:
449 no okay you don't say mustn't
450 you don't have to you don't have to
bring fresh fruit because there are so
many so mush fresh fruit in Iran
good
451 go to exercise two
452 this is exercise?

SS:
453 /three/

T:
454 two I mean not three exercise three
mistaken yes?
455 Work with a partner decide which
the following are necessary and
obligatory to do if you want to get a
drivers' license in Iran
456 look at black board

457 look at black board
458 the topic changed
459 not going to the airport and not going
to another country but looking for a
drivers' license or apply for a
drivers' license
460 if you want to get drivers' license
which of them are necessary
461 look at them
462 know how to drive

SS:
463 /yes/

T:
464 practice listen practice before a test
465 take an eye test
466 take a written test
467 have a medical exam
468 have a passport or birth certificate as
ID
469 pass a driving test
470 have a high school diploma
471 own a car have
472 an international drivers' license
473 you ask friend which of them are
necessary to have when you are
going to have a test on drivers'
license

S:
474 ask?

T:
475 no just ask don't write
(pair work)

T:
476 okay, okay, listen please now say
you say for example know how to
drive say with must or can or the
other words
477 you?

S:
478 yes we must know how to drive

T:
479 yes we must know how to drive
480 correct yes?
481 Number two you?

S:
482 we must practice before the test

T:
483 we must practice before the test

SS:
484 /can//should/

T:
485 we should practice before the test
486 sometimes you are a driver you don't need
487 it is not necessary
488 you have been driving maybe two years yes?
489 Before you get your drivers' license yes
490 should means is better
491 you may say must okay?
492 so I should practice before the test
493 you?

S:
494 I have to take an eye test

T:
495 yes I have to take an eye test yes?
496 If not the police does not let me do it, yes?
497 You?

S:
498 [+++]

T:
499 take a written test

S:
500 I can't take a written test

SS:
501 /must/

T:
502 I must take a written test or I have to yes
503 I have to take a written test
504 you please M?

S:
505 I have to a medical examination

T:
506 I have to have a medical examination

SS:
507
[/no/

T:
508 in Iran no medical examination
509 just eye exam yes?
510 So I should yes?
511 Or I don't have to yes?
512 I don't have to have a medical examination
513 just eye exam
514 you?

S:
515 I have to have a passport or birth certificate

T:
516 yes I have to have or I must have a passport
517 you please?

S:
518 I must pass a driving test

T:
519 I must pass a driving test or I have to pass a driving test
520 you?

S:
521 I don't have to [+++]

T:
522 I don't- high school diploma
523 I don't have to have a high school diploma

S:
524
[High school diploma

T:
525 yes you please?

S:
526 you don't have err own car

T:
527 I don't have to have [+++]
528 you please?

S:
529 I don't have to have a international drivers' license

T:
530 yes I don't have to have an international drivers' license
531 task on page four
532 there is another task speaking
533 do you know how to get drivers' license in the UK
534 forget about Iran
535 you know just take the drivers' license in this way in Iran
536 now we go to UK and you want to get a drivers' license
537 what do you have to do to get the drivers' license
538 the license there in what ways it it different here
539 talk to your partner
540 find out what he knows
541 be ready to report on your findings

542 now you talk to your friend and you ask him his ideas about err if in the UK they are the same as Iran

543 and there are the same steps or different steps

544 how do you get a license in the UK okay

545 if he has information you will answer

546 if not you ask him how

547 say any kind of information that you have yes?
(pair work)

T:

548 look at the black board

549 enough enough so in which phase are [+++] from Iran

550 do you think the test will be a more difficult?

SS:

551 /no//more difficult/

T:

552 exactly more difficult and may be it is a technical test

553 yes?

SS:

554 [+++]

T:

555 no no I have heard I have just heard about UK and the special and technical test that drivers' license in the UK yes?

S:

556 yes

T:

557 okay you can say is more difficult and you should be more prepared

558 you must just do a lot of [+++]

559 what things did you find?

S:

560 I found that they don't use own car

T:

561 you don't use your own car in Iran

562 it is the same I mean you don't use your own car

563 I think I think there they use their car

564 you can use your own car yes

S:

565 err they must have a medical examination

T:

566 aha what other things this is there you know

567 forget this yes?

S:

568 addiction of alcohol

T:

569 an addiction addicted to alcohol and some other some mater-

570 so you can't have a drivers' license if you are addicted

571 what else?

S:

572 I think the was a medical err medical examination and more [+++] than Iran

T:

573 yes okay?

574 what else did you find?

S:

575 [+++] exam is different

T:

576 so you must be more prepared and you must be err what?

577 You must be ready to have a difficult exam

578 how about you

579 anything new?

S:

580 I think I have very hard test for example

T:

581 um do you have a hard test written test?

S:

582 some of the law in UK is different from Iran

T:

583 aha the law is different

584 yes okay the law of the traffic rules yes

585 the rules of traffic [+++]

S:

586 I think they must have a high school diploma

T:

587 yes maybe they must have high school diploma

S:

588 I think have an international drivers' license for foreigners

T:
589 aha it is necessary
S:
590 they use general vehicles
T:
591 yes okay?
592 any ideas at the end
593 it is written you have to be ready to
give a report on your findings
594 please if you find anything then you
can come to the board and say
595 I've found out that it is necessary to
have a for example diploma
596 you must have a diploma and you
must have a lot of other things okay?

T8 (3rd Session)

- T:
1 what do you guys do?
2 What's going on?
3 What to since last Monday?
- S:
4 [+ + +]
- T:
5 ha?
- S:
6 [+ + +]
- T:
7 what did you do these last few days?
8 anything special?
9 ha?
- SS:
(no answer)
- T:
10 ha?
- S:
11 we prepare the reading for homework
- T:
12 only prepared for the readings
13 three days!
14 we're gonna see in a minute
15 where were you Ahmad?
- S:
16 I went to Mashad
- T:
17 go to Mashad?
- S:
18 yes
- T:
19 Alohom sale ala (Peace be upon him)
- SS:
20 huh
- T:
21 anyway what else?
22 how was it?
23 who did you go with?
- S:
24 I went there by my family
- T:
25 with your family?
- S:
26 yes
- T:
27 ok!
- S:
28 by the train
- T:
29 by the train ha?
- 30 did you have fun?
- S:
31 yes very much
- T:
32 how many days were you there?
- S:
33 for four days
- T:
34 four days! very nice very nice
35 and you prayed for us?
- S:
36 err green trains was a new train that was very! very modern
- T:
37 new train?
- S:
38 yes
- T:
39 really?
- S:
40 yes
- T:
41 people gonna tear it and huh very soon
42 so did you pray for us?
- S:
43 no of course
- SS:
44 huh
- T:
45 for being honest ha?
- S:
46 [+ + +]
- T:
47 no no I said you should have prayed for us
- S:
48 pray pray yes
- T:
49 did you pray for all of us! or did you forget about us and just huh
50 tell the truth
- SS:
51 huh
- T:
52 ok he forgot us
53 it's ok
54 nobody is perfect
- S:
55 we prayed to pass this time
- T:
56 you prayed to be passed this time ha?
57 be sure we pray for you
- SS:

58 huh huh huh
T:
59 anyway what did you do this morning?
S:
60 this morning I woke up early 5:30 am and said my prayers
61 and [+ + +] and then I come to class
62 and after the class I want to go to the Elmoh Sanat university for sport centre
T:
63 for what sport?
64 wrestling?
S:
65 for a match yeah
T:
66 you have a wrestling match?
S:
67 yeah
T:
68 you should have told us
69 we would come and watch
S:
70 [+ + +]
T:
71 ha? If you had told us you have a match we would have come there shouting
(shouting the student's name while clapping hands)
S:
72 thank you very much
T:
73 no! you should have told us
74 it would be fun if I was there to see how you look in your singlet
75 now they call it- what?
76 singlet
S:
77 yeah I know
T:
78 [+ + +] yes or no?
S:
79 have single
T:
80 [no no no a singlet is that uniform that the wrestlers wear
S:
81 I can show it to you
T:
82 [yeah please don't take it out
SS:
83 huh

T:
84 that's good
85 I wish you luck
86 I hope you win it
87 anyway how about you?
88 what happened to your machine?
89 huh your machine causes us sickness whenever you get into to come to class and
S:
[my machine had- and can be
T:
90 [+ + +] anyway
L! why are you late everyday?
S:
91 everyday?
T:
92 why?
93 everyday lay 15 minutes late
S:
94 I am sorry [+ + +]
T:
95 he speaks in sign language
SS:
96 huh
T:
97 no why are you late every day?
S:
98 I think that err
T:
99 [six versions
100 traffic is every day morning every day morning there is more traffic
S:
101 [Vally Asre
traffic is very err heavy
T:
102 heavy ha! Yeah!
SS:
103 huh
T:
104 traffic!
105 anyway how about you Mr S?
S:
106 nothing
T:
107 nothing about computers?
108 no news about technology?
109 nothing?
S:
110 nothing
T:
111 it's very boring ha?
112 M! did you miss your friend?
113 did you miss your friend?

S:
114 no

T:
115 no! you didn't miss your friend! no!

S:
116 he is my best friend err

T:
117 [did you miss
him?

S:
118 yes

T:
119 or you said no!

SS:
120 huh

T:
121 I was shocked
122 ok today we have a change err for
the first hour or so
123 we gonna do something on the side
of the book
124 we gonna talk about a new
125 I don't know we're gonna have a
new idea
126 we're gonna do something different
127 we're gonna do a different task ok!
128 I gonna hand out this papers
129 do not write on them
130 if you write on them you gonna get a
zero
131 you gonna fail the class
132 do you understand?
133 If one person writes on this
everybody gets zero ok!
134 please! serious
135 do not write on these papers
136 close your books
137 put everything in your desk ok!
138 you don't need to have a lot of
different thing on it ok!
139 of course you can open your
notebooks because you gonna have
to write on a separate piece of paper
ok!
140 don't chew the papers! OK! in case
you're hungry huh
141 ok basically we gonna have a
discussion about this ok!
142 we gonna start a [+ + +]
143 ok step one
144 everybody go to the first page at the
top
145 M start reading
146 read loud ok!

S:

(reads out)

T:
147 ok everybody look at me
148 how many of you have gone on a
trip! or let's say a journey to some
place far away?
149 not to Mashad or to Ghazvin
150 some place far away
151 where did you go S?

S:
152 India

T:
153 you went to India?

S:
154 yes

T:
155 good how was it?
156 did you like it?

S:
157 yes I was born in India and err

T:
158 [but you
are Iranian?

S:
159 yes huh

T:
160 ok

S:
161 and for seven years I had been in
India

T:
162 so you were there until you are seven
years old!

S:
163 yes

T:
164 interesting
165 who else?
166 Where?

S:
167 I went to Mecca

T:
168 you went to Mecca?

S:
169 yes

T:
170 ok

S:
171 three years ago

T:
172 so we have a Haji in our class

SS:
173 huh

T:
174 who else?

S: 175 I went to Europe
T: 176 you went to Europe?
S: 177 yes
T: 178 what part?
S: 179 err France and Italy
T: 180 ok what did you- I have a question
181 what did you take with you?
182 Did you take your refrigerator? Ha?
183 Your washing machine?
184 Yes or no?
SS: 185 no
T: 186 why not?
S: 187 because [+ + +]
T: 188 what?
S: 189 because it isn't essential
T: 190 aha it's not essential
191 so it's too big ha?
192 So what sort of things should you
take with you on a trip?
193 If I wanna go to let say to Pakistan
ok! what should I take with me?
194 Or if I wanna go to Thailand what
should I take with me?
S: 195 clothes
T: 196 clothes?
S: 197 your passport
T: 198 ok clothes!
199 How much clothes?
200 a lot of clothes?
SS: 201 no
T: 202 no why not?
S: 203 it depends on how many days you
want to-
T: 204 [I
wanna travel light

205 I don't wanna take too much I don't
know too many things with me
206 ok so I should take some clothes
207 ok what else?
S: 208 money
T: 209 money?
S: 210 yes money
T: 211 huh so money huh
212 that's true
213 the most important thing is money
214 what else after money?
S: 215 equipments
T: 216 personal equipment
217 like what?
SS: 218 toothbrush
T: 219 toothbrush!
S: 220 comb
T: 221 comb!
S: 222 credit card
T: 223 credit card ha? Huh
224 ok interesting let's go back to the
handout ok!
225 So we have somebody
226 he is an Englishman
227 he is British
228 he is from the UK
229 what does UK stand for?
S: 230 United
T: 231 [UK!
SS: 232 United Kingdom
T: 233 United Kingdom
234 good United kingdom
235 ok he wants to come to Iran
236 why!
237 I don't know huh
238 but he's coming here
239 I think one of these people that come
and walk in the streets
240 have you ever seen them?

241 they wear these shorts and wear long
beards
242 like this very long
243 and blond hair with the backpack
244 and they're just walking
245 I see them a lot of them [+ + +] ha?
SS:
246 huh
T:
247 anyway I think he is one of those
guys
248 because they are the only ones to
take a backpack with them
249 you know what a backpack is?
S:
250 yeah
T:
251 what is a backpack M?
S:
252 a bag like err
T:
253 [and you carry it on your
back ha?
254 It's a backpack
255 you learned it at level two
256 remember?
SS:
257 yeah
T:
258 yeah! That's why you don't know it
SS:
259 huh
T:
260 anyway what?
S:
261 much room [+ + +] possible much
T:
262 no no it says he doesn't have much
room ok!
263 he doesn't have that much room to
carry his things
264 ok he has a small area
265 only a backpack ok!
266 now we gonna start by saying
267 let's start a passport
268 who has a passport here?
269 who has a passport?
S:
270 not here
T:
271 not now in the class
272 but talking at present who has a
passport
273 maybe it's at home

274 maybe it's in your back pocket I
don't know
275 who has a passport?
276 only two people?
277 nobody else has a passport?
SS:
278 huh
T:
279 that's interesting ok!
280 Have you ever seen a passport M?
SS:
281 huh huh
T:
282 yes or no?
283 it's small yeah
284 it's small and it has your picture in it
SS:
285 huh
T:
286 and whenever you wanna go they
stamp your passport ok!
S:
287 I make it
T:
288 you make it ha! Huh
SS:
289 huh
T:
290 that's why we came here
291 we brought the camera to catch you
ok!
292 next a surf board!
293 who has gone surfing?
294 Have you ever seen the people at
this- at the sea?
295 the wave is crushing
296 so there is a very long thing called a
surf board
297 and they take it in the middle of the
water and then they jump on it
298 and orrr orrr and the wave [+ + +]
299 ok that's the surf board
300 we really need it in Iran
301 next?
S:
302 fresh fruit
T:
303 fresh fruit of course
304 oh I: ha- err of course I know some
people
305 they were immigrating to Canada
306 they were leaving
307 both families were leaving Iran
308 and they took cucumber with them
309 and oranges and huh [+ + +]

310 ok international drivers' license
 311 what do you think?
 312 who has a driver license here?
 313 one two three four people five
 people
 314 don't lie
 SS:
 315 huh
 T:
 316 anyway now you can take your
 drivers' license to the I don't know
 some of one of these bureaux
 317 and what they do is they err make it
 international
 318 transfer it to the international
 drivers' license in 24 hours for ten
 thousand tomans
 319 next books about Iran
 320 that's easy
 321 a return airline ticket
 322 travelling return ticket
 323 a map of Iran
 324 that's easy
 325 a laptop computer
 326 I [+ + +] really necessary
 327 a credit card ok!
 328 tourist visa photographs of his
 hometown tapes and CDs an
 umbrella hiking boots
 329 everybody! what is hiking?
 330 who likes to go hiking?
 S:
 331 [+ + +]
 T:
 332 ha?
 S:
 333 hiking?
 T:
 334 [+ + +]
 S:
 335 no walking hiking
 T:
 336 [mountains!]
 337 hiking!
 SS:
 338 walking
 T:
 339 what?
 S:
 340 common sporting
 T:
 341 common sporting?
 S:
 342 yes
 T:

343 ok what else?
 344 what's the different guess?
 345 what is hiking?
 S:
 346 on the ice
 S:
 347 walking
 T:
 348 on ice!
 349 What about ice skates?
 350 no that's ice skates
 S:
 351 walking
 352 normal walking
 T:
 353 ok listen
 354 when you hike you go to the
 mountains
 355 that's mountain climbing
 356 of course these are real mountains
 357 but hiking is you go to let's say I
 don't know out of the city into the
 country
 358 and you walk all- just walk through
 the hills
 359 through the trees I don't know the
 wood the forests
 360 just walking and enjoying the
 scenery
 361 that's hiking
 362 but you walk in the city that's not
 hiking
 363 you need to be out of the city ok
 364 now so everybody knows what those
 are!
 365 except M who didn't know what a
 passport is
 366 and [+ + +] next go to step 2
 367 step 2 use the boxes below to help
 him organise the things he wants to
 take to Iran
 368 put a mark there and put them in the
 boxes where you think they belong
 369 ok now what is it?
 370 talking about it say use the boxes
 below to help him
 371 who is him?
 372 who is he talking about?
 S:
 373 the person who wants
 T:
 374 yeah the person who
 wants to come to Iran
 375 first it is necessary and err
 376 ok you can't enter Iran without this

377 you must take this with you
378 something that is very important
379 now open- get a piece of paper on
your desk, Ok!
380 In a piece of paper on your desk
better write these down ok!
381 let the paper [+ + +] order the
category
382 first things that are very necessary
383 the things that are against the law
384 you can't bring them to Iran
385 three it's a good idea to bring them
386 should bring them
387 they won't hurt
388 and number 4 it's ok to bring this but
it's not necessary
389 you can bring it but you don't need it
ok!
390 number one
391 what do you guys think?
392 Necessary and it's a: something that
you need to bring
393 I wanna give you a couple of
minutes
394 two three minutes
395 make a list on your own ok!
(individual work)

T:
396 ok good let's see what do you guy
think
397 it is absolutely necessary to bring it
to Iran ha!
398 number one!

SS:
399 passport

T:
400 passport ok!
401 why do you think a passport is
absolutely necessary? Ha?

S:
402 we cannot come to Iran without

T:
403 [because
we can't?

S:
404 [+ + +]

T:
405 we can't?

S:
406 come to Iran without a passport

T:
407 we can't enter the country
408 he could come , but they won't let
him in ok!

S:
409 yes

T:
410 ok! Number two
411 what do you think about the
surfboard?
412 Is a surfboard absolutely necessary?

S:
413 no

T:
414 It is against the law?

SS:
415 no

T:
416 Is it err a good idea to bring it?

SS:
417 no

T:
418 Ha?

S:
419 no

T:
420 ok it's ok to bring it but it is not
really necessary ha?
421 which one do you think it is?

SS:
422 /2//4/

T:
423 two!

S:
424 number 4

T:
425 number 4 is- I think is better
426 but why do you think that the
surfboard is against the law?
427 you could bring it and put it in your
house decoration ok!
428 So how about fresh fruit?
429 Fresh fruit
430 what do you think?
431 one two three or four?

SS:
432 /3//4/

T:
433 three!

SS:
434 four

T:
435 four it's ok to bring but it is not
really necessary right!
436 Iran has very good fruit
437 next! An international drivers'
license

S:
438 [+ + +]

T:

439 ha?
S: 440 three
T: 441 three!
442 why?
443 tell me why?
444 why do you think it's three?
445 because?
S: 446 that man doesn't have
T: 447 [he doesn't have?
S: 448 hasn't a car
T: 449 he doesn't have a car
S: 450 [doesn't have a car and err
S: 451 he might want to rent a car
T: 452 maybe yeah maybe he wants to rent
a car
S: 453 he can hire a car from a car agency
T: 454 he can rent a car from us huh
SS: 455 huh
T: 456 I think something else you know!
457 I think it's a good
458 it's a form of identification ha!
459 one he can identify himself with the
ca- with the: international drivers'
license
460 but will he be able to drive in Iran?
461 maybe he could drive in England but
how about Tehran?
462 so which one is it?
463 one two three or four?
464 what do you guy say?
S: 465 five
T: 466 five!
467 no what do you think?
SS: 468 /3//4/
S: 469 in England the err
T: 470 [driving!
S:

471 [+ + +]
T: 472 is on the other side of the street ok!
473 what do you think about that?
SS: 474 huh
T: 475 that's doesn't matter in Tehran
476 it's actually ignorable huh
SS: 477 huh
T: 478 anyway one two three or four?
SS: 479 /2/3/4/
T: 480 I think three
481 it's a good idea to bring this ok!
482 It doesn't hurt
483 next! books about Iran?
SS: 484 3
T: 485 it's a good idea to bring it! Yeah!
SS: 486 yes
T: 487 he has one backpack ok!
488 next! a return airline ticket!
SS: 489 1
S: 490 books about Iran?
T: 491 books about Iran!
492 I don't think it's-
493 I think you could come here and buy
it but [+ + +]
494 so it's up to you
S: 495 4
T: 496 four! A return airline ticket
SS: 497 one
T: 498 one it's huh absolutely necessary
SS: 499 huh
T: 500 he might come here and I don't
know [+ + +]
501 ok next?
502 a map of Iran!
SS:

503 /4/
T: 504 four!
SS: 505 /3//4/
T: 506 I could say four
507 I don't know it depends
S: 508 a map of Iran for what?
509 for err cities
510 for the way of the cities for example
Tehran
511 or the map of mountains of Iran
512 the map of err
S: 513 [what map?
T: 514 he want a map to see where Tehran
is where Shiraz is where Mashad is
where Ghazvin is!
515 he might wanna go to these cities
S: 516 or the people of the err the location
of the err
T: 517
[countries he wants us- the city sorry
he wants to see
518 Tehran he wants to see
519 I don't know how to get from
Ferdowsi square to Darband
S: 520 he should buy in Tehran
T: 521 yeah I think he should buy it here
522 he could buy it here very cheap ok!
523 And err I don't think he could find
maps on Iran over there
524 maybe he could find an Atlas but he
should buy
S: 525
[the tour guys say to tourists
T: 526 yeah but he is not a-
527 maybe I don't know he is not going
to take a tour
S: 528 but the map of the location of the
cities of Iran is not useful
529 because where is the Shiraz where is
the Mashad it is not good for him
S: 530 and one of his friends is in Iran

T: 531 all of his friends are here?
S: 532 one of his friends
T: 533 yeah he has a friend here
534 yeah it is true his friend is here
535 so I don't know
536 what do you think?
SS: 537 4
T: 538 four!
S: 539 fifty fifty
T: 540 fifty fifty huh
S: 541 [+ + +]
T: 542 so which one is fifty fifty?
543 which one of these?
S: 544 no about the having a friend fifty
fifty
T: 545 but no! hundred percent a friend of
yours
546 you're his friend
547 your friend is coming!
S: 548 understand that-
T: 549 ok
S: 550 hundred percent
T: 551 hundred percent huh ok
552 now so does he need a map yes or
no?
SS: 553 no
T: 554 ok next!
555 a laptop computer! Huh
S: 556 two
T: 557 Mr S laptop computer?
S: 558 five
T: 559 five!
560 no! laptop yeah
S:

561 two
T: 562 two!
563 prohibited by law no!
564 it's not your personal product
565 your personal computer is yours
566 you can bring it
567 next!
S:
568 [+ + +]
T:
569 no why did you say that?
S:
570 gomrok? (customs)
T:
571 oh you haven't studied yet ok!
572 You won't pay duty
573 duty is the tax when you're going to
the customs ok!
574 it's your own personal belonging
575 next!
576 so a laptop computer throw it out
577 he only has one backpack
578 next!
579 a credit card!
SS:
580 one
T:
581 one absolutely
582 but , ok , [+ + +] your dad has a I
don't know a grocery
583 a small a very small grocery
584 does your dad take credit cards?
SS:
585 no
T:
586 who takes credit cards in Iran?
S:
587 nobody has international credit card
T:
588 huh
S:
589 [+ + +]
T:
590 it's rubbish huh
SS:
591 huh
T:
592 who takes credit cards in Iran?
593 If I was him I would bring it
594 hotels , travel agencies take credit
cards
595 I don't know different places tourist
agencies take credits cards

596 there are places that take credit cards
in iran ok!
597 so I would bring it
598 you guys don't want it
599 next a tourist visa?
SS:
600 one
T:
601 a tourist visa is like the passport
anyway right?
S:
602 yes sure
T:
603 next! photographs of his hometown?
SS:
604 huh
T:
605 ok
S:
606 [+ + +]
T:
607 what's wrong with [+ + +]? Ha?
608 or did you listen to some different
types of roozah (religious sermons)
or I don't know
SS:
609 [+ + +]
T:
610 ha?
SS:
611 [+ + +]
T:
612 exactly because they like to see what
was the:
613 I don't know tourists are weird huh
people
614 they come to visit
615 are a little bit weird
616 they like to see the crazy things ok!
617 I think it's correct because all cities
in the world are all the same
618 you need to go into the country and
see-
S:
619 the culture
T:
620 yeah the cultures
621 different types of things
622 next!
623 an umbrella!
624 what do you think?
SS:
625 four
S:
626 he can buy it in Iran

T: 627 he can buy it in Iran!

S: 628 it doesn't rain

T: 629 it doesn't rain in England!
630 it rains every day
631 but in Tehran!

S: 632 every year

T: 633 no! thank God it has been raining a
good [+ + +]
634 thank God
635 ok next!
636 hiking boots!

S: 637 it's not necessary

SS: 638 4

T: 639 um well he has a friend
640 but in Iran we walk a lot in the
streets

S: 641 he can buy in Iran

T: 642 it's cheaper too! Ha!

S: 643 dollar in Tehran

T: 644 he pays dollars?

S: 645 yes

T: 646 he brings the pound maybe
647 he [+ + +] dollars who knows but the
pound is much more powerful than
the dollar ha? Ok!
648 now! I want you to get in groups
649 listen two by two ok!
650 now I want you to add
651 no we'll do it together
652 it's ok
653 what do you guys think?
654 let's add three or four things to the
group of words we have that are
absolutely necessary
655 what necessary thing that is not
written in the page itself!
656 of course we said the first and the
most important thing money
657 money is one
658 what else?

S: 659 [+ + +]

T: 660 huh you're talking about a [+ + +]
ha?
661 He the what?
662 I don't know
663 does he- you said absolutely
necessary?

S: 664 it depends on the person

T: 665 he can buy it here
666 he can share

S: 667 emergency

T: 668 emergency no

S: 669 [+ + +]

T: 670 clothes?

S: 671 yes

T: 672 ok I don't get sick
673 I have a friend and I don't get sick
674 money
675 what else?
676 can you bring your girl friend?

SS: 677 huh

T: 678 yes or no?

SS: 679 yes

T: 680 absolutely not
681 he should travel single
682 ok next?

S: 683 insurance

T: 684 insurance! well

S: 685 clothes

T: 686 what?

S: 687 clothes

T: 688 blouse?

S: 689 no clothes

T: 690 clothes! ok

SS:
691 huh

T:
692 clothes are important

S:
693 [+ + +]

T:
694 gun! Huh

SS:
695 huh huh

T:
696 what else?
697 one more
698 come on?

S:
699 if one thing is necessary
700 it's necessary to bring with himself
his tablets and err

T:
701 he is not sick
702 he is very healthy

S:
703 if he has a special fever

T:
704 a what?

S:
705 special fever

T:
706 desert?

S:
707 fever

S:
708 a disease

T:
709 aha!

SS:
710 huh

T:
711 ok disease huh
712 a disease good
713 good job
714 if he has a certain disease right!

S:
715 cancer pneumonia

T:
716 pneumonia
717 pneumonia is not a , cancer
718 but ok diabetes
719 ok he should bring his medicine

S:
720 if he is governmental person he
should bring the bodyguards

T:
721 bring bodyguards huh

SS:
722 huh

T:
723 of course he is your friend
724 I don't know but my friends [+ + +]
725 yeah yeah next!
726 how about things that are against the
law?

S:
727 drugs

T:
728 drugs!
729 ok he shouldn't bring drugs

S:
730 number two

T:
731 what?

S:
732 number two

T:
733 number two
734 then what else?

S:
735 magazine

T:
736 magazines!
737 ok he shouldn't bring bad magazines
or books

SS:
738 huh huh huh

T:
739 it's true
740 it's very bad
741 what else?

S:
742 wine champagne

T:
743 guns! Good

S:
744 wine

T:
745 what?

S:
746 wine champagne

T:
747 alcohol!
748 he shouldn't bring?

S:
749 over 18

S:
750 [+ + +] credit card and we travel to
another country
751 we take money for buy err credit
card or no by

T:
752 you don't pay the money

753 you don't pay for a credit card
754 you have credit in the bank
755 it will issue a credit card if you have a good credit
756 and then you can use the credit card instead of money
757 in Iran we need a credit card and money
758 he doesn't really need it but if he brings it it doesn't hurt ok!

S:
759 the credit card for him err have a lot of pound or dollar when he go in Iran?

T:
760 that's what he says
761 he needs the money ok!
762 Money is more important than credit card ok!
763 let's to [+ + +] enough ok!
764 how about this group
765 what did you come up with?
766 read one of your sentences!
767 be quiet listen!

S:
768 it's a good idea to bring a map of Iran
769 because I want to know where I and help him to go every place

T:
770 it's a good idea to?

S:
771 bring a map

T:
772 [bring a map of Iran ok!
773 does he have to bring a map of Iran or not?

S:
774 no I haven't

T:
775 tell me
776 you didn't say it it's a good idea
777 what does it mean they have to bring?
778 he does not have to bring
779 should bring
780 shouldn't bring!

S:
781 it should he should bring it

T:
782 he should bring it?

S:
783 yes he should bring it but it is not necessary

T:
784 ok how about you?

S:
785 about the return airline ticket
786 it is necessary and he must bring it because he wants to back his country

T:
787 so he must bring it good
788 why?
789 Because he wants to go back to his country
790 ok Mohammad!

S:
791 it is necessary to check a return airline ticket go from Iran
792 and I think it is better that he have a he has open ticket

T:
793 huh why?
794 how long?
795 What about you?

S:
796 passport is necessary because he can't enter

T:
797 [ok good he must bring a passport
798 why?

S:
799 he can't enter to Iran without it

T:
800 he can't enter the country
801 God bliss your teacher
802 he can't enter the?

S:
803 to Iran without a passport

T:
804 good what about you?

S:
805 he must not bring a surf board because it's so big and takes much room

T:
806 it takes much room
807 too much room good
808 how about you?

S:
809 he needs a return airline ticket because he can't come back to his country on time and then he must pay a lot of money for another ticket

T:
810 good three four people talk about return airline ticket huh

SS:
811 huh

T:
812 don't worry about it too much
813 it's gonna be ok
814 how about you?

S:
815 it is not necessary to bring fresh fruit
because there is fresh fruit in Iran

T:
816 good

S:
817 but not the best fruit in Iran they go
out Iran

T:
818 best fruit leave the country no
819 if you have money you can buy good
fruit
820 believe me
821 you?

S:
822 he doesn't have to take international
driver's license because driving in
Iran hasn't law
823 and it is very difficult for him to
drive in Iran

T:
824 doesn't have law!
825 are you serious?

S:
826 [+ + +]

T:
827 what?

S:
828 we don't respect it

T:
829 yeah good good job
830 let's read this read loud and clear
831 read please examples?

S:
832 you must have a passport
833 you have to have a passport
834 you have got to have a passport

T:
835 ok what's the difference between
these sentences?

S:
836 [+ + +]

T:
837 ha? Look look at me!
838 what is the difference between these
sentences
839 you must have a passport you have
to have a passport you have got to
have a passport

S:
840 this

T:
841 [they're the same
842 what do you wanna say?

S:
843 there is no difference

T:
844 no difference huh good man
845 they are the same
846 they are all the same
847 ok now read the information

S:
[reads out the information]

T:
848 so we use must have to or have got
to to show something is absolutely
necessary ok!
849 you must come to class if you wanna
pass
850 God bliss your teacher ok!
851 today I'm very lucky huh
852 ok continue

S:
853 you must not bring fresh fruit to Iran

T:
854 ok fresh fruit must not
855 what does must not and can not
856 what's the difference between them?

S:
857 there is not difference

T:
858 ok what does it mean here
859 look you must not bring fresh fruits
into the country
860 you cannot bring fresh fruit into
country
861 it means that you are not both of
these
862 mean that you are not allowed to
bring fruit ok
863 it says cannot yes can't ...
864 what does can give you?
865 give you ability ha?
866 mental physical so on so forth but
here the [+ + +]
867 you can if you want yeah
868 you are not supposed to
869 if somebody wants to bring [+ + +]
into Iran in the airport are they
gonna allow him to enter?
870 absolutely not
871 this is the law you cannot take fruit
872 in America even in states we cannot
take California oranges out of
California
873 we can only take few

874 you wanna take a box or carton they
don't allow it

875 nor can you take it in

876 they take your car same thing

877 can't do it

878 so read that information

S:
(reads out the information)

T:
879 we can't

880 it's not allowed

S:
881 a lot of fruit

T:
882 no if you wanna bring an orange and
put it in your pocket of course they
are not supposed to take it

S:
883 [+ + +] pocket for example 3 oranges
in

T:
884 [it
depends on the customs agent

885 depends on the kind of mood he is in

886 but he can say no if he wants

887 usually they're nice people and they
don't say anything if you wanna
bring two or three

S:
888 [to send it to another country

T:
889 [it's
the seed

890 the seed is what they are worried
about

S:
891 [+ + +]

T:
892 you could bring a seed and plant it
and this changes the I don't know

893 I know I'm pretty sure that is
something to do with the seeds

S:
894 grains

T:
895 seeds ok!

896 you plant it and grow! another tree
so that's why I think I am not sure

S:
897
[vegetables

T:
898 next!

S:
(reads out)

T:
899 ok now let's move on

900 now look at the sentences you wrote

901 now look at the sentences you wrote

902 now I want you to read the sentences
you have written

903 if you wrote them in a different way
change them and correct them
underneath the paper

904 read number one!

S:
905 you must bring a passport because

T:
906
[louder louder

S:
907 you must bring a passport because
you need to introduce himself [+ +
+]

T:
908 he must bring his passport because
he needs to introduce himself for
the?

909 he needs to bring a passport because
they don't let him in the country

910 next! Correct your ques- correct your
sentence

S:
911 a credit card would be an important
thing for him because everything
that he wanted to buy [+ + +]

T:
912 ah again!

S:
913 a credit card would be an important
thing for him

914 because everything that he wants to
buy and don't need to pay money

T:
915 ok so what one of these should be
used he must bring it!

916 He has to bring it!

917 He has got to bring it

S:
918 he can bring it

T:
919 he can bring it or?

920 he should

921 correct your question and read it
again

922 come on say it

S:
923 a credit card can be an important
thing for him because everything

that he wants to buy he needs the money

T: 924 good job next?

S: 925 he don't have to take

T: 926 [he don't?

S: 927 he doesn't

T: 928 he doesn't good

S: 929 he doesn't have to take fresh fruit with himself because he can buy it in Iran cheaper

T: 930 ok now use one of these
931 he doesn't have to

S: 932 he doesn't have to

T: 933 good job
934 how about you?

S: 935 a return airline ticket is necessary because he can't find it in Iran

T: 936 a return airline ticket what?

S: 937 because

T: 938 read it again from beginning I can't hear you guys

S: 939 airline ticket must be necessary because he may be can't find it in Iran

T: 940 must be necessary!
941 a return airline ticket!
942 err he must buy a return airline ticket because he may not be able to find it in Iran
943 of course he can find it but [+ + +]
944 ok how about you?

S: 945 he doesn't have to take an umbrella because we don't have much rain and it is very cheaper in Iran

T: 946 no that's all wrong
947 read it again slower

S: 948 he doesn't have to take an umbrella

T: 949 take an umbrella where?

S: 950 to Iran

T: 951 where are you?

S: 952 I am 14

T: 953 you you

S: 954 I'm in Iran

T: 955 so he must he doesn't he shouldn't bring
956 you are here ok!
957 he shouldn't bring?

S: 958 he shouldn't bring an umbrella into Iran because Iran hasn't much rain

T: 959 Iran doesn't have much rain

S: 960 [much rain

T: 961 ok good and it's cheaper to buy in Iran
962 good job one more person

S: 963 you mustn't bring tapes and CDs into Iran because the customs officer make a problem for you

T: 964 customs officer err will make a problem for him!
965 we don't need that customs officer will get him into problem ok now!
966 look at par- exercise three ok!
967 now we're talking about somebody who need to take a drivers' license ok!
968 now we will talk about the must have to have got to must not ok!
969 I want you to use them like know how to drive
970 we're talking about somebody who wants to get a drivers' license ok!
971 and these are the things he needs or he doesn't need ok!
972 number 1 he must know how to drive
973 to get a drivers' license ok!
974 number two?

SS: 975 you must

T: 976 number two

S: 977 you must practice before the test

T: 978 you must practice what?
979 Practice piano?

S: 980 driving

T: 981 driving good job
982 how about take a test?

S: 983 he has to

T: 984 [I can't hear you]

S: 985 he must take an eye test before

T: 986 he must take an eye test for what?

S: 987 to get driving license

T: 988 he must take an eye test?

SS: 989 [+ + +]

T: 990 ok good so he must take an eye test
to be able to get a drivers' license
right!
991 Take a written test!
992 M!

S: 993 he must take a written test

T: 994 he must take a written test!

S: 995 yes

T: 996 for what?

S: 997 [+ + +]

T: 998 he must take a written test to be able
to get a drivers' license next?
999 How about a medical examination?
ha?

SS: 1000 shouldn't

T: 1001 we shouldn't!

SS: 1002 he must

T: 1003 [he must have a medical
examination!]

SS: 1004 no

T: 1005 so what?

S: 1006 because he isn't able to drive
1007 for example he has problem in his
hand or err

T: 1008 he is handicapped
1009 but the officer is gonna take an
exam he is not blind

S: 1010 before the exam before the exam at
the before the after the err eye test
err one doctor say sit and stand

T: 1011 jump

S: 1012 yes jump

T: 1013 ok I don't have a license in Iran so I
don't know

S: 1014
[you get in the United states?]

S: 1015 if you drug err use drugs

T: 1016 [drugs!]

S: 1017 yes and then stand and then shake
his hand err

T: 1018
[shaking]

S: 1019 shaking

T: 1020 really?

S: 1021 then he knows that you use drugs

T: 1022 they take can take a blood test I
don't know

S: 1023 yes medical examination
1024 after medical test
1025 first register say that if you have
sickness before you register

T: 1026 ha good um ok next have a passport
or a birth certificate ID!

S:
1027 yes

T:
1028 yes!
1029 In Iran!

SS:
1030 yes

T:
1031 you have a passport?

SS:
1032 no birth certificate

T:
1033 ok good

SS:
1034 huh

T:
1035 so now we are talking about having
a passport or a birth certificate
1036 you have to have a passport or birth
certificate to get a drivers' license?

SS:
1037 yeah

T:
1038 you must sort of what?

S:
1039 [+ + +]

T:
1040 and?

S:
1041 and military err

T:
1042 [ha! You have to have
your!

S:
1043 [+ + +]

T:
1044 ok good job how about pass the
driving test?
1045 you must!

SS:
1046 you must

T:
1047 [you must pass the driving
test
1048 how about have a high school
diploma?

S:
1049 you

T:
1050 you!

S:
1051 can

T:
1052 can but you don't have to complete
M?

S:
1053 you can have a high school diploma
but it's not necessary

T:
1054 good job next own a car

S:
1055 /not necessary//don't have it/

T:
1056 own the car!
1057 J!

S:
1058 you don't have own a car because it
is not necessary

T:
1059 you don't have to own a car
because it's not-
1060 have an international drivers'
license!
1061 you have to have one! Mr K

S:
1062 you don't have to have an
international license

T:
1063
[glasses?

S:
1064 license

T:
1065 license ok!

S:
1066 but it is not necessary

T:
1067 you don't have to have one
1068 it is not necessary
1069 what is needed to get a drivers'
license in err England or America or
china or Japan ha?
1070 What?

S:
1071 do something for somebody

T:
1072 huh

SS:
1073 huh

T:
1074 be quiet
1075 what else?

S:
1076 [+ + +]

T:
1077 I don't know
1078 let's talk about it
1079 what do you think?
1080 yeah you must take your own car

1081 I think it's really stupid to go and
do a driving test in somebody else's
car

1082 and you haven't practised it
because it's not the car you gonna
drive

1083 I think it's stupid

1084 but the other people say you should
be able to drive in any car

S:

1085 it's correct [+ + +] automatic

T:

1086 do what?

1087 I'm gonna drive it

1088 I'm not gonna drive your car

1089 I'm gonna drive my car

SS:

1090 [+ + +]

T:

1091 ok! This is- that's the truth

S:

1092 [+ + +]

T:

1093 ok! That's what I'm saying

1094 you must practice

1095 how do you practice practice in the
streets

1096 so which car do you use?

1097 your car

1098 the car you're gonna drive

1099 that's your car not anybody else's
car

1100 you gonna drive your car

1101 you practice with your own car

T9 (2ND Session)

T:

- 1 any questions?
- 2 Err last session I taught you (.) going to the doctor(.)and a bad toothache
- 3 you haven't questions?
- 4 so first of all yes?

S:

- 5 what's the meaning get

T:

- 6 [what's the meaning of

S:

- 7 what's the meaning of get rid of?

T:

- 8 when you don't want some people
- 9 when something bothers you you try to get rid of it
- 10 understand?
- 11 try to get rid of it?
- 12 so for the reading
- 13 then we will have a quick review of vocabulary unit 7
- 14 so we will have a quick review of vocabulary unit seven
- 15 health care is the reading which we're going to cover
- 16 I taught you about reported speech ok?
- 17 So we're going to cover the drills
- 18 and if we have time I'm going to teach you the vocabulary of unit 8
- 19 any questions before we start?
- 20 Thank you very much
- 21 So be quiet
- 22 Mr A! Mr D! close your books

SS:

(act out the dialogue)

T:

- 23 thank you questions?

S:

- 24 why did the dentist inject some Nebokane?

S:

- 25 what did the dentist?

S:

- 26 why

S:

- 27 because he wanted to err he want to get he want- he wanted to pull the tooth of

S:

- 28 what did the dentist do after he talked [+ + +]?

S:

- 29 [+ + +]

S:

- 30 what had the dentist done before the extract Sam's bad tooth?

T:

- 31 before?

S:

- 32 before extracted

T:

- 33 extracting!

S:

- 34 Sam's bad tooth

T:

- 35 thank you sit down

S:

- 36 how did dentist

T:

- 37 [how did the dentist

S:

- 38 the dentist

- 39 how did the dentist solved his problem?

S:

- 40 first he injected some [+ + +]

- 41 then he pulled the bad tooth out

T:

- 42 then the dentist pulled his bad tooth out

S:

- 43 what was awful for him inject or extracted tooth?

T:

- 44 what was?

S:

- 45 awful for him the inject or

T:

- 46 [injection or

S:

- 47 injection or extraction extracted tooth

S:

- 48 why did the dentist popped around his mouth?

T:

- 49 why?

S:

- 50 why did the dentist

T:

- 51 [why did the dentist good

S:
52 pop around his mouth

S:
53 because he could pull his tooth take out injection

T:
54 because he wanted to find the bad tooth

T:
55 so repeat (repetition)

T:
56 reading Mr I?

S:
(reading out)

S:
57 which part of his body did he [+ + +] at first?

T:
58 which- what part of his body did the doctor examine first? Ha?

S:
59 yes the doctor first examined his tongue

T:
60 it sometimes strikes me means sometimes I come to think that ha?
61 To think that some people do not approve of seeing their doctor so on and so forth ok?
62 something that strikes me
63 our family doctors
64 I'm I phoned my family doctor and managed to etc
65 don't use or(.)or and before etc(.)etc means and(.)and um?
66 And others
67 err I phoned him and made an appointment in the past
68 the doctor had come back
69 anyway any questions?
70 yes?

S:
71 we should use

T:
72 [should we use

S:
73 should we use the subject in the second part of err sentences
74 past perfect for example
75 but he had [+ + +] people he went to the clinic?

T:
76 Mr E read!

S:
(reads out)

T:
77 what did doctor say?

S:
78 he asked him some questions to find out the problem his problem
79 and after the examination he told him that you have run down and you are burning the candles at both ends

T:
80 thank you

S:
81 and he advised him to rest
82 advised him to get more rest and go to the beach and

T:
83 [thank you thank you very much
84 H?

S:
(asks a question)

T:
85 so err he told he obeyed whatever he HAD told him

S:
86 excuse me after this he says he took his advice

T:
87 err the receptionist said that the doctor was on his!

S:
88 rounds

T:
89 rounds
90 the doctor would have a change of air surrounding weather yes?
91 you are run down
92 you're run down you are extremely?

SS:
93 exhausted

T:
94 tired ok?
95 you are extremely exhausted
96 looked at- the doctor looked at his tongue to see
97 THE doctor ha?
98 he went to see the doctor

99 after the arrived at the doctor's office
 he did such and such and such
 100 and aha don't forget we use a lot with
 both countable and uncountable nouns
 as you know ok? Yes?
 101 but the difference is that when we use
 a lot a lot of with: countable nouns the
 noun which follows a lot of must be
 plural
 102 a lot of questions
 103 the doctor asked me a lot of questions
 ha?
 104 I have a lot of money ok?
 105 and err(.)Mr M!
 S:
 (reads out)
 S:
 106 why did err why did doctor advice
 after check the patient?
 T:
 107 why did the?
 S:
 108 why did err why did doctor err advise
 err check the patient
 T:
 109 why did the?
 S:
 110 why did doctor advise
 T:
 111 [why did THE
 doctor
 S:
 112 the doctor advise after check the
 patient?
 S:
 113 [+ + +] that the patient err haven't a
 serious problem and should just rest
 and doesn't have any [+ + +]
 T:
 114 so he understood that he DIDN'T have
 S:
 115 didn't have
 T:
 116 G!
 S:
 117 how long had he been waiting before
 he saw doctor
 T:
 118 saw THE doctor
 S:
 119 saw the doctor

T:
 120 he could see the doctor
 S:
 121 he had waited for five minutes
 T:
 122 he had been
 123 repeat the question!
 T:
 124 so he was JUST exhausted
 125 the doctor told him that he was JUST
 126 the was past
 127 err you should get a change of AIR at
 surroundings
 128 not weather ok?
 129 walk along the cliffs
 130 the doctor advised him to walk along
 the? cliffs
 SS:
 131 131 [cliffs
 T:
 132 or into the?
 133 the country
 SS:
 134 [country
 T:
 135 he gave him some medicine
 136 not he took him some he gave him
 some medicine ha?
 137 any questions?
 138 yes!
 S:
 139 what's the meaning of it would do you
 a world of good
 T:
 140 it would be useful ha?
 141 It would help you feel better
 S:
 142 what happened to the patient before the
 doctor came back?
 T:
 143 what happened to the?
 S:
 144 in the office
 T:
 145 what did- what did the patient do?
 146 He just went into the room and
 collapsed on a chair
 S:
 147 you said I I feel as fit as a fiddle
 means?
 T:

148 [+
++]

S:
149 I am in very good shape

T:
150 any questions?

S:
151 what was the result of the patient?

T:
152 what was the?

S:
153 result of the patient

T:
154 you mean what?

S:
155 [+++] after err the

T:
156 [ha! what did the err
what did he conclude at the end?

S:
157 conclude?

T:
158 conclude to come to result
159 what did he conclude at the end?
160 any questions?

S:
161 I have a question about get it off your
chest err
162 can we say to a friend for example
when he or she comes to our house get
it off your chest for example

T:
163 [no no let's talk about it

S:
164 let's talk about the word
165 err we can say that instead of make
yourself at home?

T:
166 I don't think so
167 get it off your chest means let's talk
about it
168 let's talk about your problem

S:
let's

T:
169 let's talk about your problem
understand?
170 ok so vocabulary of unit seven please?
171 ready?
172 one two three start!
(students recite the words in chorus)

T:
173 thank you very much
174 so last session we had a reading err
about going to the?
175 [+++] so the writer is going to the
doctor because he didn't feel well ok?
176 He had a problem
177 he couldn't sleep
178 well no appetite so he went to see the
doctor to see what was wrong with him
all right?
179 now! today we are going to read about
healthcare and how doctors nurses and
other people work together in order to
keep us healthy and cure our diseases
ok?
180 open you books to page 80 and start
reading
181 five minutes
(silent reading by the students)

T:
182 thank you
183 close your books close!
184 how does a general practitioner spend
most of his time?

S:
185 by diagnosing err

T:
186 what?

SS:
187 [+++]

T:
188 give a complete answer!

S:
189 pay attention for the patient

T:
190 to pay attention?

S:
191 take care of that patient

T:
192 to look after or?

S:
193 [+++] sicknesses

T:
194 [+++] listen how does a general
practitioner spend his time?

S:
195 they spend most of their time err
diagnosing err(.)sicknesses
196 every day

T:

197 every day sicknesses?
S:
198 every day
T:
199 HE spends(.)he spends most of his
time diagnosing everyday?
200 sicknesses
S:
201 [sicknesses
T:
202 ok what do the specialists usually do
for a patient?
S:
203 he wrote a prescription for [+ + +]
T:
204 what?
205 answer everybody!
206 What do the specialists usually do for a
patient?
SS:
207 specialists usually arrange a time err
T:
208
[usually?
S:
209 usually arrange arranges a time for
patient err nursing home or hospital
T:
210 so other what would specialists do for
a patient?
211 he would?
S:
212 usually operate them
T:
213 he usually operates them?
S:
214 he usually gives some [+ + +] cereal or
err
T:
215 no! he may send the patient to the
hospital for treatment
216 or a patient may be advised to see a
specialist when the sickness is serious
or they need major operations
217 the specialists may then arrange a time
218 arrange a time for the patient(.)to be
admitted into a?
219 hospital
220 understand?
221 what can an oculist do for you?
SS:

222 [+ + +]
T:
223 A! what can oculist do for you?
S:
224 he check err he check the eyes
T:
225 [checks?
S:
226 err
T:
227 he?
S:
228 tests
T:
229 examines
S:
230 examines the eyes and err and wrote
and write a [+ + +]
S:
231 an oculist first examines the eyes and
after that [+ + +] to the problem
232 for example some are short-sighted or
the others err gives [+ + +] or contact
lenses to err
T:
233 so he examines your sights and then he
write out prescriptions for?
S:
234 for the option
T:
235 for optician
SS:
236 optician
T:
237 for the opticians
238 for the opticians
239 what does some infectious decreases
commonly caught by children?
S:
240 [+ + +]
T:
241 what are some of the infectious
diseases commonly caught by
children?
SS:
242 chicken pox [+ + +]
T:
243 again what are some infectious
diseases commonly caught by
children?
S:

- 244 scarlet fever, flu and err chicken pox are commonly caught by children
- T:
245 caught by ha?
246 are some of the diseases commonly caught by?
247 children
248 infectious diseases such as chicken pox ok? the flu and scarlet fever ha? are commonly caught by children
249 what are some of the common things used to prevent or cure an illness?
- SS:
250 pills
- T:
251 close your book!
- S:
252 I want to see the question
- T:
253 what are some of the common things used to prevent or cure illness illnesses?
- SS:
254 [+ + +]
- T:
255 M!
- S:
256 pills injections syrups
- T:
257 A! you!
- S:
258 ointments syringe
- T:
259 injection
- S:
260 injection
- T:
261 injections
- S:
262 injections and err
- T:
263 [+ + +] ha?
264 are some of the things used? to prevent or cure an illness
265 so open your books to page 80
266 please! (.) find different tenses go on!
- S:
267 general practitioners spend most of their time diagnosing everyday illness such as cough and minor pain simple present
- T:
268 simple present (several other sentences)
- S:
269 other patients may be advised to see a specialist is a major part of this sentence and I don't know what do we say it in English
- T:
270 passive voice may be advised
- S:
271 I don't know
- T:
272 passive voice
- S:
273 passive voice
- T:
274 ha? may be advised to?
- S:
275 passive voice
- T:
276 now I'm talking about tenses
277 what tense is it?
- S:
278 present
- T:
279 what kind of present?
- S:
280 err present err unreal
- T:
281 what?
- S:
282 simple
- S:
283 simple present
- T:
284 simple present
- S:
285 why simple present
- T:
286 may be advised! Ok?
287 so other!
- S:
288 some of the commonest things used to prevent or cure the condition are pills ointments sleeping pills syrups injection bandage
289 err disinfecting is simple past
- T:
290 why?
- S:

291 used
T: 292 so no it's simple present
293 some of the other things which are used
S: 294 special parts of the body are treat-
T: 295 are treated
S: 296 treated by special doctors simple present
T: 297 simple present
298 why are most of- why are- almost all the sentences simple present?
299 why?
S: 300 because it is generally about patients and err
T: 301 whenever we talk about health and healthcare we use simple present?
S: 302 generally not always
S: 303 talking present about the facts
T: 304 ha!
305 Because it talks about the facts habits routines ha?
306 when we talk about these things we use?
S: 307 simple present
T: 308 simple present tense ok?
309 the facts the sun rises in the east set in the?
310 west
311 this is a fact ha?
312 understand?
313 so find different kinds of sentences and be quick please!
S: 314 sometimes the original doctor is a surgeon so he himself may perform the operation
315 statement
T: 316 statement

S: 317 I think all of them is statement
T: 318 I think all of them?
S: 319 all of the sentences is
SS: 320 [are
S: 321 are statements
T: 322 are statements ok
323 so what is this reading about?
S: 324 it's about the treatment of the doctors some of the treatments of the doctors and
T: 325 treatment of doctors?
S: 326 the treatment for the patients and the kind of cure and the err the equipments for the cure
T: 327 equipments?
S: 328 I think
T: 329 isn't is equipment countable or uncountable?
330 do you remember?
SS: 331 uncountable
T: 332 this is why I told you to open your dictionaries
333 last session equipment is UNCOUNTABLE understand?
334 the equipment used?
335 to cure diseases
336 it is about how doctors ha?
337 how doctors cure patients and the equipment they use to?
338 ha?
339 to do so to cure diseases what?
S: 340 and every kind of illnesses have an special doctor for err specialists for it
T: 341 so every illness has?
S:

342 an specialist
T: 343 an specialist ok?
344 should be treated or should be cured by a?
345 an specialist
S:
346 it is about the food that keep us healthy
S:
347 when our illness is serious the doctor advise us to refer to a specialist doctor
S:
348 about the healthy and classes of curing the sickness
T:
349 it's about?
350 health?
S:
351 it talks about health and classes of medicines
T:
352 classes
S:
353 classes
T:
354 classes of?
355 [+ + +] diseases and? Um?
356 the equipment we use to do so
S:
357 and some of illnesses are contagious and children easily caught them
T:
358 and children easily caught them?
359 easily catch them
S:
360 catch them
S:
361 about the kinds of disease and err
T:
362 getting disease
363 and?
S:
364 and how they err spread and they how we stop them and cure them
T:
365 how about [+ + +] tell us?
S:
366 it's about what the doctor do one by one
T:
367 why doc- what?

S:
368 what the doctor do one
T:
369 [what the doctor does
S:
370 does
T:
371 or what doctors do
S:
372 what doctors do one by one and err they have err
T:
373 it's about what the doctor does to cure ha?
374 a illness or what doctors do to cure illnesses or the stages of curing an illness and the process of curing an illness
375 understand?
S:
376 [they had a (.) private cure
T:
377 ha! And each illness has its own treatment
S:
378 [treatment
T:
379 treatment ha?
380 what else?
S:
381 the part of this reading it's about
T:
382 [is about
S:
383 is about err some of diseases
T:
384 [some diseases
S:
385 some disease caught by err you in childhood or
T:
386 [by children
S:
387 by children or a: by old people such as blood pressure err blood sugar I think and:
T:

388 no not blood sugar
 389 that is diabetes
 S:
 390 diabetes and some of err some of them
 iS: err
 T:
 391
 [some of them?
 S:
 392 some of them
 T:
 393 [are
 S:
 394 are err activate
 T:
 395 ha! Some diseases are caught by?
 SS:
 396
 [accident
 T:
 397 accident so err
 398 a general practitioner spends most of
 his time diagnosing everyday
 sicknesses such as cough the flu sore
 throat and minor pains
 399 so what is- what is the meaning of this
 sentence? it's
 S:
 400 some of them practitioners means
 general doctors?
 S:
 401 yeah
 S:
 402 spend their most of time to
 T:
 403 [most of
 their time
 S:
 404 most of their time to diagnosing some
 illnesses and sicknesses such as cough
 the flu sore throat and err and the
 minor pains
 T:
 405 and minor pains
 406 so a general practitioner is a doctor
 um?
 407 for example when you have a sore
 throat when you have the flu you go
 to a general practitioner
 408 you don't go to the specialist ok? Yes?

409 he deals with everyday sicknesses such
 as the flu minor pain these things ok?
 410 So let's see what he does
 411 he usually reassures his patients and
 sends them with a prescription
 412 so he usually ha?
 413 he usually tells his patients that?
 414 his or her patients that there is nothing
 wrong with them ok?
 415 and he write he or she write a
 prescription for them ok?
 416 give them prescription so that the can
 go to the?
 S:
 417 drug store
 T:
 418 drug store
 419 and?
 S:
 420 fill it fill the prescription ha?
 421 But if a more serious illness needing
 immediate attention comes his way like
 pneumonia and appendices he then
 send the patient to the hospital for
 treatment
 422 if a patient comes to his office ha?
 423 with a more dangerous or more serious
 illness such as pneumonia and
 appendices the general practitioner
 sends the patient to the hospital for
 treatment because he should be cured
 424 treated yeah
 S:
 425 excuse me attention comes his way
 comes to the office?
 T:
 426 other patients may be advised to see
 specialist if the illness is serious or
 they need major operations
 427 so some people need major operations
 um?
 428 like when you have a heart problem
 you have to be sent to a hospital
 429 err major operation
 430 the specialist may then arrange a time
 for the patient to be admitted into a
 hospital or nursing home where all the
 necessary equipment is on hand
 431 what is the meaning of this sentence?
 S:
 432 available

- 433 everything is available
- T:
434 where?
- S:
435 in hospital
- T:
436 in a hospital ok?
437 everything?
438 every equipment is available in a hospital for!
- S:
439 operation or:
- T:
440 for an operation
441 for a major operation ha?
442 and so the specialist or the doctor sends the patient to the hospital or a?
- SS:
443 nursing
- T:
444 [nursing home well
445 sometimes the original doctor is a surgeon so he can may perform the operation
446 what is the meaning of this sentence?
- S:
447 sometimes the [+ + +] himself surgeon and he operate
- T:
448 [an?
- S:
449 can operate the patient and he can do err such as a specialist
- S:
450 some of the common doctors are surger, surgery
- T:
451 [can do surgeries
- S:
452 can do surgeries and
- T:
453 [some of the general practitioners you mean?
- S:
454 some of the general doctors
455 yes they are they can do surgeries
- T:
456 some of the specialists are surgeons too aha?
- S:
457 no after seven years in university they become general doctors but they can do some surgeries
- T:
458 then they would they won't call them
- S:
459 but general doctor but
- T:
460 general doctors but general practitioners we call them specialists ha?
- S:
461 ok if we call the specialist what we call the first?
462 and the people who(.)after seven years they continue their study for two years and after that for two years again for four years?
- T:
463 we call THEM specialist?
- T:
464 after seven years a doctor become a general practitioner
465 the general doctor yes then?
466 specialist
467 then if you want be a surgeon in Iran this is the way I believe ha?
468 this the way it is in Iran
469 I don't know anything about other countries
470 sometimes the original doctor is a surgeon that is you go to a surgeon's office ha?
471 So he himself he or she ha?
472 operates you that is he she doesn't send you to a surgeon ok?
473 some diseases are infectious or contagious like those commonly caught by children for example chicken pox
474 while others may simply be due to old age ok?
475 so what is this sentence about?
476 the meaning of the sentence?
- S:
477 people in different ages can ge- err can err they may become ill some special ills for example children
- T:
478 [some special illnesses
- S:
479 illnesses err for example

- 480 children usually get chicken pox and some infectious illnesses
- 481 but the older people usually err get some other illness like rheumantises
- T:
482 [rheumatism
- S:
483 rheumatism and err (.) heart err heart attack for example and err some others
- S:
484 old age cause many problem for
- T:
485 [many prob?
- SS:
486 problems
- T:
487 so people of different ages suffer from different diseases ok?
- 488 children usually suffer from contagious diseases because they are: they are not very careful ok?
- 489 they touch everything
- 490 they put everything in the mouth
- 491 they err they talk to everyone ok? Yes?
- 492 so they usually have they usually suffer from contagious diseases ok?
- 493 while older people older people may suffer different from other(.)diseases such as(.)blood pressure(.)and indigestion and rheumatism far more than the young
- 494 you see what it is people err older people may suffer from
- 495 indigestion rheumatism heart problems and blood pressure far more often than the young
- 496 understand? Yeah?
- 497 still other costs of ill health may be due to misfortunes or accidents
- 498 so(.)these misfortunes and accidents may cause?
- SS:
499 diseases
- T:
500 diseases or illnesses ok?
- 501 Example of these are burns called [+ + +] blood poisoning, food poisoning and bone fractures
- 502 so these are some of the um? Some of the illnesses and health troubles due to accidents yes?
- S:
503 what does misfortune mean?
- T:
504 misfortune means bad luck(.)bad luck
- S:
505 excuse me and blood poisoning?
- T:
506 blood poisoning
507 it's a disease
508 it's a very dangerous disease
509 understand?
- 510 some of the commonest things used to prevent or cure these conditions are pill powders ointments sleeping pills injections disinfectors and [+ + +]
- 511 so sometimes, sometimes we try to prevent the disease ok?
- 512 prevent a disease but some when- when the disea- when someone gets sick then we try to cure it
- 513 understand? Yes? So in order to prevent or cure diseases ok? We make use of different(.)ha?
- 514 we make use of different equipment ha?
- 515 such as these pills powders ointments sleeping pills ha?
- 516 injections bandages disinfectants and?
- SS:
517 serums
- T:
518 serums and serums
519 the last paragraph
520 YOU talk about the last paragraph
- S:
521 special parts of the body for example eyes ears or [+ + +] needs err
- T:
522 [need
- S:
523 need yeah need specialist
524 need specialists for example for our eye
525 we went to we go(.)oculists
526 and for curing our for example teeth tooth
- T:

527
[to cure
S:
528 to curing
T:
529 to cure
S:
530 to cure our teeth we go to a dentist and
531 and they use different equipment to-
for to cure us
S:
532 for special parts our body we should go
to the specialist
533 because the err(.)skilled to this part of
the body and we go err to them and err
they examine our body and [+ + +]
prescription and err check our- check
err our body
T:
534
[to examine
S:
535 that examine us with special equipment
T:
536 equipments
S:
537 equipments
T:
538 H! what is the last part of the [+ + +]?
S:
539 the last part was about
T:
540 [is
S:
541 is about special illness or
T:
542 [special?
S:
543 special illness
T:
544 illnesses
S:
545 illnesses and the special and cure many
T:
546
[we should?
S:
547 we should go
T:
548 special illness?
S:

549 yes we should go to a special doctor
T:
550 no
S:
551 for example for the sight we should go
T:
552 [to
check our sight we should go to a?
S:
553 occultist
554 when our teeth [+ + +] we should
T:
555 when
our teeth?
556 ha? We go to?
S:
557 to the dentist
T:
558 to the dentist
S:
559 each doctor err each doctor or each
specialist has a err has a special
equipment to cure
T:
560
[has special equipments
S:
561 special equipment to cure the people
err
T:
562
[to cure people
S:
563 people err for instance dentist ha-
dentists have forceps [+ + +] and err
drills to fill in the
T:
564
[to fill or?
S:
565 to fill or move out or extract bad tooth
T:
566
[bad teeth
S:
567 bad teeth
T:
568 ok thank you other?
S:
569 for each part of our body there are
specialists like [+ + +] cure that part

570 err and when we when special part of our body has problem we should go to the err doctor related the err that part of body

T:
571 so we should go to the? Ha?
572 the specialist

S:
573 specialist for example
574 if our eyes has problem we should go to the oculist and our teeth
575 if we have problem in our tooth we should go to the dentist

T:
576 so if our tooth ache if our tooth- our teeth sorry if our teeth ache we should go to the dentist
577 if our if we have problems with our sight we should go to the oculist ok?
578 so special parts of the body are treated by special doctors understand?
579 so you can't go to?
580 to the dentist for short-sightedness
581 we should go to an?
582 oculist
583 dentists extract or fill teeth and make denture using equipments such as drills forceps and?
584 water sprays ok?
585 so can they extract your tooth when it is bad ha?
586 sometimes they fill it ha?
587 and they also make dentures for older people um?
588 and the equipment they use are drills forceps and water sprays
589 oculists examine eyes test eye and write prescriptions for opticians ok?
590 so an oculist can tests your? Ha? Sight ha?
591 to see what's wrong
592 are you short-sighted
593 then so he write a prescription for the?
594 optician to make(.)glasses for you ok?
595 to make glasses for you
596 opticians make glasses or contact lenses
597 you know contact lenses are very popular nowadays ok? Yes?
598 people prefer to wear contact lenses than glasses

599 altogether it takes several doctors to keep you healthy
600 so several doctors should work together in order to keep you?

SS:
601 healthy

T:
602 healthy ok?
603 any questions? yes?

S:
604 what does drill mean?

T:
605 drill?
606 So when go to the doc- when you go to a dentist and he wants to fill your tooth first he uses a drill understand? Yes?
607 or you use a drill to make a hole in the wall ha?
608 Black and Decker ha?
609 Makita yes?

S:
610 admitted admitted it to?

T:
611 to be accepted

S:
612 optician?

T:
613 optician is a person who makes glasses

S:
614 excuse me opticians make glasses or contact lenses
615 what's the meaning of make?
616 for contact lenses opticians make glasses or contact lenses

T:
617 some people

S:
618 [how can they make contact lenses it means they suggest

T:
619 [I don't know

S:
620 that's wrong

T:
621 I've never used I've never used contact lenses

S:
622 I use one for seven years

T:
623 did you buy them?

S:

624 yes

T:

625 ok

S:

626 and only two or three factories in the
world can make these lenses

627 what's the meaning opticians make?

T:

628 I don't know

629 any questions?

630 so please close your books